

# **CARBONITE CODE**

## **Carbonite Code User Manual**

**v1.2**

---

## Thank You For Choosing Ross

You've made a great choice. We expect you will be very happy with your purchase of Ross Technology.

Our mission is to:

1. Provide a Superior Customer Experience
  - offer the best product quality and support
2. Make Cool Practical Technology
  - develop great products that customers love

Ross has become well known for the Ross Video Code of Ethics. It guides our interactions and empowers our employees. I hope you enjoy reading it below.

If anything at all with your Ross experience does not live up to your expectations be sure to reach out to us at [solutions@rossvideo.com](mailto:solutions@rossvideo.com).



David Ross  
CEO, Ross Video  
[david.ross@rossvideo.com](mailto:david.ross@rossvideo.com)

## Ross Video Code of Ethics

Any company is the sum total of the people that make things happen. At Ross, our employees are a special group. Our employees truly care about doing a great job and delivering a high quality customer experience every day. This code of ethics hangs on the wall of all Ross Video locations to guide our behavior:

1. We will always act in our customers' best interest.
2. We will do our best to understand our customers' requirements.
3. We will not ship crap.
4. We will be great to work with.
5. We will do something extra for our customers, as an apology, when something big goes wrong and it's our fault.
6. We will keep our promises.
7. We will treat the competition with respect.

8. We will cooperate with and help other friendly companies.
9. We will go above and beyond in times of crisis. *If there's no one to authorize the required action in times of company or customer crisis - do what you know in your heart is right. (You may rent helicopters if necessary.)*

---

## Document Information

- Ross Part Number: **4856DR-110-01.2.0**
- Release Date: February, 2025. Printed in Canada

The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice or obligation.

## Copyright

©2025 Ross Video Limited, Ross®, MiniME™, Carbonite Code, and any related marks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Ross Video Limited. All other trademarks are the property of their respective companies. PATENTS ISSUED and PENDING. All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Ross Video. While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this document, Ross Video assumes no responsibility for errors or omissions. Neither is any liability assumed for damages resulting from the use of the information contained herein.

Microsoft®, Windows®, and Windows XP® are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Macintosh®, and OS X® are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Google Chrome™, Google®, and the Google logo are registered trademarks of Google Inc.

NVIDIA® and GeForce® are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of NVIDIA Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.

MIDI and MMA are trademarks of the MIDI Manufacturers Association.

Audinate®, Dante®, and Dante Via™ are trademarks or registered trademarks of Audinate Pty Ltd.

NDI® is a registered trademark of Vizrt NDI AB.

ASUS Trademark is either a US registered trademark or trademark of ASUSTeK Computer Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Reference to any ASUS products, services, processes, or other information and/or use of ASUS Trademarks does not constitute or imply

endorsement, sponsorship, or recommendation thereof by ASUS.

## Patents

Patent numbers US 7,034,886; US 7,508,455; US 7,602,446; US 7,802,802 B2; US 7,834,886; US 7,914,332; US 8,307,284; US 8,407,374 B2; US 8,499,019 B2; US 8,519,949 B2; US 8,743,292 B2; US D752,530 S; GB 2,419,119 B; GB 2,447,380 B; and other patents pending.

## Software Licenses

This product may use one or more software components subject to licenses. Refer to [Third-party Licenses](#) on page 144 for a complete list of licenses that apply to this product.

## Company Address

**Ross Video Limited** — 8 John Street Iroquois, Ontario, Canada, K0E 1K0

**Ross Video Incorporated** — P.O. Box 880, Ogdensburg, New York, USA, 13669-0880

General Business Office: (+1)613-652-4886

Fax: (+1)613-652-4425

Toll Free Technical Support (North America): 1-844-652-0645

Toll Free Technical Support (International): +800 1005 0100

Technical Support: (+1)613-652-4886

After Hours Emergency: (+1)613-349-0006

E-Mail (Support): [techsupport@rossvideo.com](mailto:techsupport@rossvideo.com)

E-Mail (General): [solutions@rossvideo.com](mailto:solutions@rossvideo.com)

Website: [www.rossvideo.com](http://www.rossvideo.com)

## Technical Support

At Ross Video, we take pride in the quality of our products, but if a problem does occur, help is as close as the nearest telephone.

Our 24-Hour Hot Line service ensures you have access to technical expertise around the clock. After-sales service and technical support are

---

provided directly by Ross Video personnel. During business hours (eastern standard time), technical support personnel are available by telephone. Outside of normal business hours and on weekends, a direct emergency technical support phone line is available. If the technical support personnel who is on call does not answer this line immediately, a voice message can be left and the call will be returned shortly. Our Technical support staff are available to react to any problem and to do whatever is necessary to ensure customer satisfaction.

---

# Contents

<b>Windows<sup>®</sup> Login (Ross<sup>®</sup> provided hardware only).....</b>	<b>9</b>
---	----------

<b>Operation and Setup Notes.....</b>	<b>10</b>
---------------------------------------	-----------

<b>Features.....</b>	<b>11</b>
RAVE Audio Mixer.....	11
Clean Feed Output.....	11
Custom Controls.....	11
Sequencer.....	11
Device Control.....	11
DVE (Fly Key).....	11
Effects Dissolve.....	11
Matte/Wash Generator.....	11
ME Effect System.....	11
Media-Store.....	12
MediaManager.....	12
MediaWipe.....	12
MemoryAI Recall Mode.....	12
Memory System.....	12
MultiViewer.....	12
ViewControl.....	12
Pattern and Matte/Wash Generators.....	13
Tally Outputs.....	13
Chroma Key.....	13

<b>Installing Carbonite Code.....</b>	<b>14</b>
To Install Carbonite Code.....	14

<b>Software Licenses.....</b>	<b>16</b>
To Add Software Licenses.....	16

<b>DashBoard.....</b>	<b>17</b>
Switcher Status in DashBoard.....	17
Configuration.....	17
Devices.....	17
Live Assist.....	17
PanelINK.....	17
To Assign a Page to a Custom Page Button.....	18
Custom Controls.....	18
ViewControl.....	18
MediaManager.....	18
Personality.....	18
Help.....	18
Audio Mixer.....	19
Menu Group Access.....	19
To Set the Menu Access.....	19

<b>Role Based Access Control.....</b>	<b>20</b>
To Turn on Role Based Access Control for Ross Platform Manager.....	20

<b>SoftPanel.....</b>	<b>21</b>
Menu Area.....	21
User Area.....	21
Control Area.....	21
Bus Area.....	22

<b>Ultritouch.....</b>	<b>23</b>
------------------------	-----------

<b>Audio and Video Processing.....</b>	<b>24</b>
Video Processing and Flow.....	24
Audio Processing and Flow.....	24

<b>Video Sources.....</b>	<b>25</b>
To Select a Source on a Bus from DashBoard.....	25

<b>Video Layering.....</b>	<b>26</b>
Re-Entry.....	26
Re-Entry Timing.....	26
To Re-Enter an ME.....	26
FlexiClean Clean Feed.....	27

<b>Video Preview.....</b>	<b>28</b>
MultiViewer.....	28

<b>Matte Source.....</b>	<b>29</b>
To Set Up a Matte Color.....	29

<b>Copying.....</b>	<b>30</b>
ME Copy.....	30
To Copy an ME.....	30
Key Copy.....	30
To Copy a Key.....	30
Key Swap.....	30
To Perform a Key Swap.....	30

<b>Transitions.....</b>	<b>31</b>
Performing Transitions.....	31
To Perform a Transition.....	31
To Perform a Transition on TouchDrive (Memory Area).....	32
To Perform a Transition on TouchDrive (No Memory Area).....	34
To Perform a Transition on Carbonite Black.....	35

Cut Transitions.....	35	To Export a Set.....	54
Dissolve Transitions.....	36		
To Set Up a Dissolve.....	36		
Wipe Transitions.....	36		
To Set Up a Wipe.....	36		
DVE Transitions.....	36		
To Set Up a DVE Transition.....	37		
MediaWipe Transitions.....	37		
To Set Up a MediaWipe.....	37		
<b>Keying.....</b>	<b>39</b>	<b>Media-Store.....</b>	<b>55</b>
Self Keys.....	39	Working With Media-Store Animations.....	55
To Set Up a Self Key.....	39	Working With Media-Store Audio.....	55
Auto Select Keys.....	39	Media-Store File Specifications.....	55
To Set Up an Auto Select Key.....	39	Loading Stills or Animations.....	56
Chroma Key.....	40	To Load a Media Item.....	56
To Set Up a Chroma Key.....	40	Deleting a Media Item.....	56
DVE Keys.....	42	To Delete A Media Item.....	56
To Set Up a DVE Key.....	42	MediaManager Channel Control.....	57
To Apply a DVE to a Key (Fly Key).....	42	Media-Store Attributes.....	57
To Apply a Border/Edge Softness to a DVE			
Key.....	43		
Show Alpha.....	43	<b>Custom Controls.....</b>	<b>58</b>
Masks.....	43	Recording/Editing Custom Controls.....	58
To Box Mask a Key.....	43	To Record a Custom Control.....	58
Split Keys.....	44	To Edit a Custom Control.....	58
To Set Up a Split Key.....	44	Custom Control Pause Mode.....	59
		To Set the CC Pause Mode.....	59
		Running a Custom Control.....	59
		To Run a Custom Control.....	60
		Naming Custom Controls.....	60
		To Name a Custom Control.....	60
		Deleting Custom Controls.....	60
		To Delete a Custom Control.....	61
		Copying and Pasting Custom Controls.....	61
		To Copy and Paste a Custom Control.....	61
<b>Memory Functions.....</b>	<b>45</b>	<b>Sequencer.....</b>	<b>62</b>
Storing Memories.....	45	Creating/Editing Sequences.....	62
To Store a Memory.....	45	To Create/Edit a Sequence.....	62
Recalling Memories.....	45	Loading and Running a Sequence.....	63
Memory Attribute Color Coding.....	46	To Load a Sequence.....	63
To Recall a Memory.....	46	To Run a Sequence.....	63
Memory Attributes.....	46	Sequence Names and Mnemonics.....	63
To Set the Memory Attributes.....	47	To Name a Sequence.....	63
Deleting a Memory.....	48	Deleting a Sequence.....	64
To Delete a Memory.....	48	To Delete a Sequence.....	64
Memory Names and Mnemonics (TouchDrive		Copying and Pasting a Sequence.....	64
only).....	48	To Copy and Paste a Sequence.....	64
To Assign a Name to a Memory.....	48		
<b>Audio Mixer.....</b>	<b>49</b>	<b>Network Setup.....</b>	<b>65</b>
Sample Rate Conversion.....	49	DashBoard Network Settings.....	65
Audio Mixer Interface.....	49	To Connect DashBoard to the Switcher.....	65
Audio Mixer Setup.....	50	FTP/SFTP Connection.....	65
To Set Up Audio Faders.....	50	To Create an FTP/SFTP Connection.....	66
To Assign Audio Channels to Mix			
Layers.....	51	<b>System Access.....</b>	<b>67</b>
To Configure Audio Outputs.....	51	To Enable/Disable a System Access Method.....	67
<b>Switcher Sets.....</b>	<b>53</b>		
To Store a Set.....	53	<b>Video Mode and Latency.....</b>	<b>68</b>
To Load a Set.....	53	To Set a Video Mode.....	68
Importing a Set.....	54	To Set the System Latency.....	68
To Import a Set.....	54		
Exporting a Sets.....	54		

---

## **Video Inputs.....69**

Video Input Setup.....	69
To Set up an External Video Input.....	69
To Set up an Internal Video Input.....	69
Source Names.....	70
To Set Up a Source Name.....	70
To Assign a TSL ID to a Video Input.....	70
Mnemonics.....	71
To Customize Mnemonics for TouchDrive.....	71
To Customize Mnemonics for Carbonite Black.....	71
Auto Key Setup.....	71
To Set Up an Auto Key Association.....	71
Input Router.....	72
To Route Sources to Switcher Inputs.....	72
NDI® Sync.....	72
To Set the NDI® Sync Source.....	72
Custom Page Auto Follow.....	73
To Assign a Page to a Custom Page Button.....	73
To Assign a Custom Page to Follow an Input.....	73
Substitution Table.....	74
To Set Up a Substitution Table.....	74

## **Video Outputs.....75**

Video Output Setup.....	75
To Set up a Video Output.....	75
FlexiClean Clean Feed.....	76
To Set Up Clean Feed.....	76
ME Follows.....	76
To Set Up an ME Follow.....	76
On-Air Setting.....	77
To Set the On-Air Status for an Output.....	77

## **MultiViewer.....78**

To Set Up a MultiViewer.....	78
MultiViewer Clock.....	79
To Set Up a MultiViewer System Clock.....	79
To Set Up a MultiViewer Countdown Timer.....	79

## **Personality.....81**

Personality Settings.....	81
General Settings.....	81
Transition Settings.....	82
Color Schemes.....	82
To Select a Color Scheme.....	82
To Create a Custom Color Scheme.....	83
Bus Maps.....	83
To Create a Bus Map.....	83
User Buttons.....	83
To Set A User Button.....	84

## **ViewControl.....85**

ViewControl Overview.....	85
Custom Control Buttons.....	85
Bus Selection Buttons.....	85
Keyer Transition Buttons.....	85
Transition Buttons.....	85
Custom Control Button Setup.....	86
To Set up the Custom Control Buttons.....	86
ViewControl Setup.....	86
Connecting ViewControl over NDI®.....	86

## **MultiPanel.....88**

To Set Up MultiPanel Permissions.....	88
---------------------------------------	----

## **MIDI Controller.....89**

To Connect the X-TOUCH COMPACT to DashBoard.....	89
To Configure the X-TOUCH COMPACT Interface.....	89
To Configure the Button Layers on the X-TOUCH COMPACT.....	89
To Map Buttons to Functions.....	90
Default X-TOUCH COMPACT Mapping.....	90
Custom Mapping.....	90
To Create a Custom Button Mapping.....	91

## **Diagnostics.....93**

Switcher Status.....	93
Switcher Reset.....	93
Custom Reset Settings (RState).....	93
Factory Default Settings.....	94
Switcher Status Monitor.....	94

## **Specifications.....95**

Switcher Resources.....	95
Video Input Specifications.....	95
Video Output Specifications.....	95
Power Consumption.....	95

## **Custom Control Events.....96**

Operations Custom Controls.....	96
(BKGD DVE).....	96
Custom Control Events.....	97
Keyer.....	98
Media-Store.....	106
Matte.....	109
Sequencer.....	110
Special.....	111
Switcher Operation.....	111
Transitions.....	112
Personality Custom Controls.....	120
Personality.....	120
Installation Custom Controls.....	121
Switcher Installation.....	121
MultiViewer.....	127

---

Device Custom Controls.....	132
Audio Mixer (Device).....	132
Camera.....	133
GPI.....	134
PBus II.....	134
RossTalk.....	135
Video Server.....	139
 <b>MIDI Device OID List.....</b>	<b>141</b>
 <b>Third-party Licenses.....</b>	<b>144</b>
libsamplerate.....	144
OpenSSL.....	144
Original SSLeay License.....	145
 <b>Glossary.....</b>	<b>146</b>
 <b>Index.....</b>	<b>149</b>



---

## Windows® Login (Ross® provided hardware only)

The server comes with the Microsoft® Windows® operating system and all the required software pre-installed.



**Important:** The server is configured from the factory without a Windows® password. To ensure network security you should add a password to the default account as soon as you have your system installed. Refer to the Windows® help system for information on changing the password.

---

## Operation and Setup Notes

When setting up and using Carbonite Code there are a few things that you should keep in mind. These notes will help you better set up the system to meet your production needs, as well as achieve the best audio and video performance.

- The NDI® Access Manager may be required to best manage your NDI® sources.
- Using RDP (Remote Desktop) to remotely connect to the Carbonite Code PC is not recommended. You can use other applications like TeamViewer to connect remotely.
- Remember to update the Windows® operating system to ensure your system is protected with the latest security updates and patches.

---

## Features

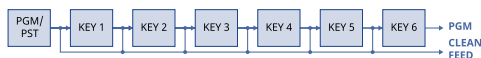
Thank you for buying a Ross Video Carbonite Code. The Carbonite Code builds on the Ross Video reputation for innovative switchers for any application.

### RAVE Audio Mixer

### Clean Feed Output

Clean feed is typically used for bilingual and live-to-tape productions. It provides a second Program output that is derived from a different location than the standard program output. A frequent application is the recording of shows for later airing without call-in phone numbers inserted.

The clean feed output can come from before or between the keyers.



### Custom Controls

This feature brings the power of macros to the switcher operator. Button presses, menu selections, event commands, or even the switcher state can be recorded to a custom control with pauses or holds between the events. A simple button press can play these events back again. Step through complex show openings as easily as pressing Custom Control buttons 1, 2, then 3.

### Sequencer

The switcher has 5 Sequencers that allow you to create a playlist or rundown of custom events, much like custom controls. Each Sequencer can be run independently or linked to other Sequencers so that they all advance together. The Sequencer uses sequences to store the rundown of events. These sequence files can be loaded into one or multiple Sequencers.

**Tip:** You can link multiple Sequencers together so that as you advance through one, the other Sequencers will advance.

### Device Control

The switcher can control a number of external devices, such as video servers and robotic cameras. For a complete list of supported devices, and information on how to set up and

control these devices, visit the Ross Video website

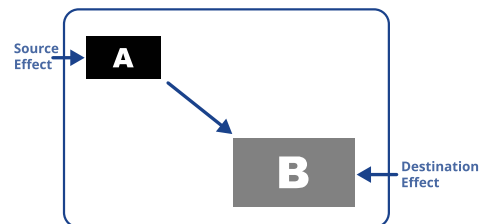
([rossvideo.com/production-switchers/carbonite/interface-list](http://rossvideo.com/production-switchers/carbonite/interface-list)).

### DVE (Fly Key)

The advanced 2D DVE comes standard with each switcher, and can be used for performing over the shoulder, or picture in picture shots. This allows all key types to be zoomed, cropped, and repositioned horizontally and vertically to create the look you want, or you can use one of the useful pre-built 2D effects to perform 2D background transitions.

### Effects Dissolve

The Effects Dissolve feature allows you to interpolate from one memory to another using a memory recall. The switcher will interpolate from the starting memory to the destination memory, creating a smooth, two key frame effect.



Only elements such as clip level and pattern position can be interpolated in the effects dissolve. Other elements, such as crosspoint selection, pattern, and next transition data are recalled first, and then the switcher will slew to the recalled memory.

An effects dissolve can be performed on as many elements and MEs as required, based on the memory that is being recalled.

### Matte/Wash Generator

A matte generator and complex wash generator per ME, capable of multi-color washes comes standard. Any one of the color generators can be assigned to MATTE, or wipe pattern edges. An additional simple color generator is available for an Aux Bus.

### ME Effect System

The ME (Multi-level Effect) systems are standard. The number of MEs depends on the chosen switcher model.

## Media-Store

Up to 4 independent channels of still/animations are available switcher-wide, allowing for thousands of full screen stills and logos that can be cached and used on the switcher.

Media-Store provides 4 GB of cache. The number of images cached increases considerably when smaller, non-full screen images like logos are used.

## MediaManager

The MediaManager allows you to easily manage stills and animations on the switcher in a graphics interface.

## MediaWipe

A MediaWipe allows you to use an animation from the Media-Store to play over a background or key transition. When the transition starts, the switcher plays the selected animation over top of the background and keys that are being transitioned. A cut, dissolve, wipe, or DVE wipe is then performed layered under the animation to bring up the next shot when the animation ends.

## MemoryAI Recall Mode

We take the guessing out of memory recalls by ensuring that a memory recall will not affect what is currently on-air. MemoryAI uses the content of the memory to configure the Next Transition area and Preview bus for the background and keyers so that the next transition takes the same sources on-air that were on-air in the memory.

For example, store a memory that has a key on-air with CAM1 and CAM2 selected on the background. When this memory is recalled normally, it pops the same key on-air with CAM1 and CAM2 on the background. When the memory is recalled with MemoryAI turned on, CAM1 is selected on the preset bus, and CAM2 is selected on a key that is not on-air. The transition area is then set up for a background transition to bring CAM2 onto the background, take any on-air keys off, and take a key on-air with CAM1.

## Memory System

### MultiViewer

Each MultiViewer allows you to view up to 16 video sources (32 with Shift), in 45 different layouts, from a single output BNC. Any video source on the switcher, including ME Program and Preview can be routed to any box on the MultiViewer. All boxes on the MultiViewer output include mnemonic source names and red and green tallies.

Each MultiViewer head supports an integrated clock that can display time of day, timecode, or a countdown timer. The position, size, and color of the clock can be adjust.

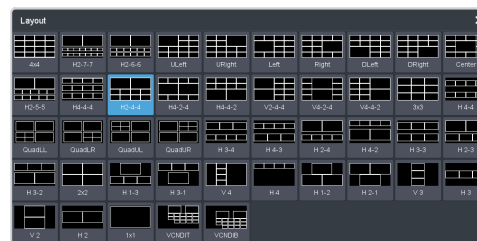


Figure 1: HD Layouts

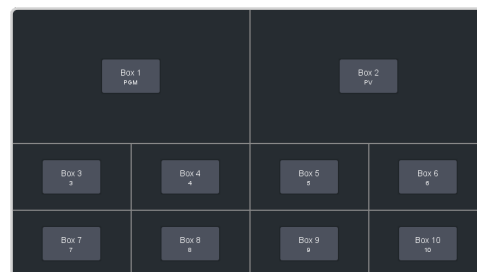


Figure 2: MultiViewer Grid

### ViewControl

The ViewControl touchscreen interface through DashBoard allows you to select sources on switcher buses, perform transitions, and run custom controls to recall memories or control external devices. The MultiViewer Shift function allows you to assign sources to a shifted set of MultiViewer boxes, expanding the number of sources available on ViewControl from 16 to 32.

**Tip:** It is recommended that the large Preview and Program boxes not be assigned shifted sources as they will follow the bus selecting.

ViewControl takes the MultiViewer output of the switcher and overlays the DashBoard interface over it. Bringing the MultiViewer output into DashBoard is accomplished either

---

by using multiple SDI/HDMI™ converters or a single SDI to NDI® converter.

## **Pattern and Matte/Wash Generators**

A single pattern generator dedicated to wipes comes standard, and is equipped with 10 classic wipes. Most wipes can be rotated, bordered, multiplied, aspectized, and repositioned.

## **Tally Outputs**

The switcher supports standard TSL tallies.

## **Chroma Key**

The chroma keyers uses advanced video processing technology to provide exceptional blue spill reduction and clean edges, even with difficult source material. Glass, smoke, translucent materials, and natural shadows are handled superbly.

There are 4 floating Chroma Keys that are available across all MEs.

# Installing Carbonite Code

Install the Carbonite Code software on your PC. The Carbonite Code software can be installed on any Windows® 11 computer with an NVIDIA® graphics card, but performance will be limited by your hardware. The following hardware configuration is recommended.

## Hardware Requirements

The following describes the recommended *minimum* hardware configuration for Carbonite Code for customer or business partner supplied hardware.

Item	Server	Desktop
Processor	Intel® Xeon® Silver 4410T (10 Cores)	Intel® i9-12900 (16 Cores)
	<b>Note:</b> Carbonite Code is optimised for use with Intel® CPUs.	
GPU	NVIDIA RTX™ 4000 Ada	NVIDIA® GeForce RTX™ 3080
	<b>Note:</b> Carbonite Code is optimised for use with NVIDIA® GPUs.	
Memory	32GB DDR5	
Storage	100GB SSD	
USB	3 (1×License Dongle, 1×Keyboard, 1×Mouse)	
Network	10G Ethernet Port	
Power Supplies	Select a power supply based on the power and connection requirements of the system components. It is recommended to operate power supplies at 40-80% of their total capacity for optimal efficiency and overhead. For reference, the hardware supplied by Ross Video makes use of redundant ASUS® 1300W 50.5MM SLIM Platinum power supplies.	
OS	Microsoft® Windows® 11 Pro for Workstations	Microsoft® Windows® 11 Pro
	<b>Note:</b> Earlier versions of Windows® may function correctly, but some Carbonite Code features and functionality will not be supported.	

## Software Components

Carbonite Code has the following installed components on the Start menu:

- Carbonite Status Monitor — manages all the services required for the switcher. Individual services can be stopped and started.
- License Tool — add or maintain software licenses for the switcher.
- Uninstall Carbonite Code — remove the switcher and supporting applications from the PC.
- USB Folder — simulates the USB drive that is used by Carbonite switchers to store media items and other system files.

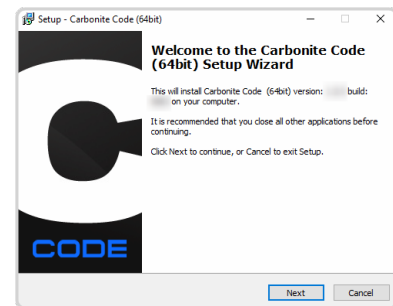
**Note:** For best performance, do not install any additional third party software applications onto the system, aside from the NDI® Tools and DashBoard. Third party software applications that did not come pre-installed on your system can place demands on system resources that may negatively impact real-time audio/video processing resulting in performance degradation in recording and/or playback. Install third party application at your own risk.

## To Install Carbonite Code

The installation wizard will help you install the software on your PC.

**Note:** If you are using your own hardware, ensure that your USB Licenses Dongle is installed in the PC before installing the software. The switcher software will try to detect the dongle when it starts the application.

1. Launch the CarboniteCode-x64 installer on the PC you want to run the switcher and follow the onscreen instructions.



2. Review the **End User Licensing Agreement (EULA)**, select **I accept the agreement** and click **Next**.
3. Enter a **User Name** and **Organization** (optional) and click **Next**.
4. Select where you want the application to be installed and click **Next**.  
You can either accept the default location or click **Browse** and select a new location.
5. Enter a name for the folder on the **Start Menu** that you want to use for the application and click **Next**.

---

6. Click **Install**.

**Note:** If you have a previous version of Carbonite Code installed, you will be prompted to overwrite it. Click **Yes** to proceed.

7. Click **Finish** to complete the installation and launch the Carbonite Code Core Service.

**Note:** Clear the **Start Carbonite Code Core Service** checkbox if you do not want to start the service at this time. You can start the service manually.



# Software Licenses

Switcher resources need to be licensed to be fully functional. Obtain licenses through a dongle or online through a licenses server.

**Note:** If you do not have a valid license, or are using a trial version, *Not Licensed* is shown on all the outputs of the switcher.

Carbonite Code supports the following licensed options.

- **Carbonite Code** — the base license for the switcher with 3 MEs and 6 keys per ME.
- **Carbonite Code Num Audio Auxes** — the number of Aux outputs on the Audio Mixer.
- **Carbonite Code Num Audio Faders** — the number of audio faders on the Audio Mixer
- **Carbonite Code Num Input** — the number of video inputs to the switcher.
- **Carbonite Code Num Outputs** — the number of video outputs from the switcher.

## To Add Software Licenses

Software licenses are managed and validated by a remote server.

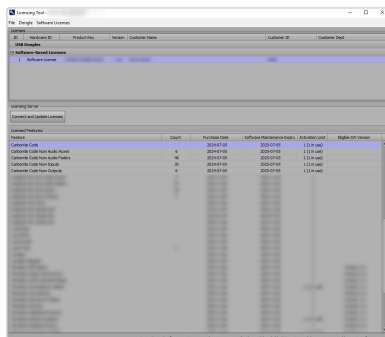


**Important:** The Licensing Tool requires an internet connection to validate the software license information.

**Note:** If your software has never been licensed, contact your Ross Video sales representative for information on registering your product and purchasing software licenses.

**Note:** If you purchased Carbonite Code with the hardware server (CCODE-HW-1RU) or with a separate licensing dongle (CCODE-30-USB) the licensing information is stored on the USB licensing dongle.

1. Launch the License Tool application from the **Carbonite Code (64bit)** folder on the Start Menu.



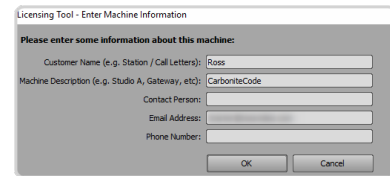
Licenses can come from an external server (**Software-Based Licenses**) or an installed

dongle (**USB Dongles**). All of these sources are listed in the **Licenses** section. Refer to your sales material to determine which you have.

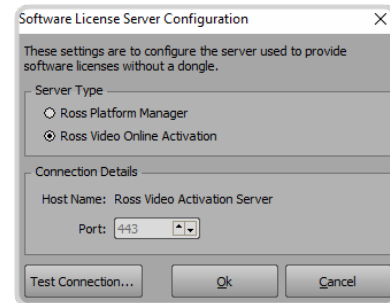
The **Licensed Features** section lists all of the software features that have been installed.

**Note:** If you get a popup about expiring software licenses, please contact Ross Video for information on extending your license.

2. Click **File > Edit Machine Info** and update the information about your machine.



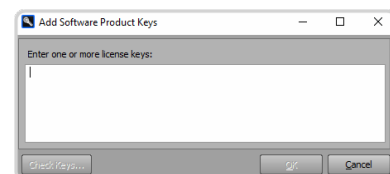
3. Click **Software Licenses > License Server Configuration** and select **Ross Video Online Activation** and click **OK**.



4. Click **Software Licenses > Add Software License**.

**Note:** If you have been given a **Trial** licence, do **not** click **Add Trial License**. The trial license you have been given is a fully functional license with a time expiry and is processed differently than the trial license.

**Note:** If you have an installed dongle, refer to the sales information that came with your dongle for information on updating your licenses.



5. Enter the License Keys you were provided for the options you purchased and click **OK**.

The system will try to establish an internet connection to the Ross Licensing server and your purchased licenses will be shown in the **Licensed Features** section.



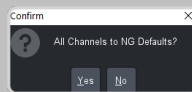
# DashBoard

DashBoard provides the main menu system to the switcher.

Download and install the latest version of DashBoard from <http://www.opengear.tv/>. Review the documentation that comes with DashBoard for information on installing and launching DashBoard.

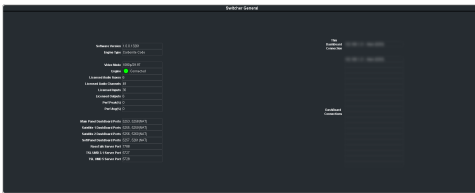
**Note:** Carbonite Code requires DashBoard v9.1, or higher.

**Tip:** When a confirmation popup is shown in DashBoard the keyboard shortcut is `alt y` or `alt n`.



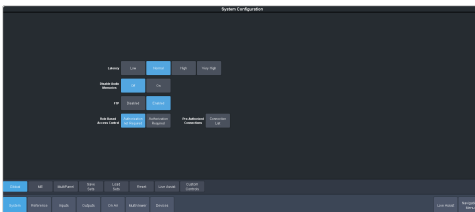
## Switcher Status in DashBoard

The DashBoard control system allows you to connect to the switcher and view status information for various components.



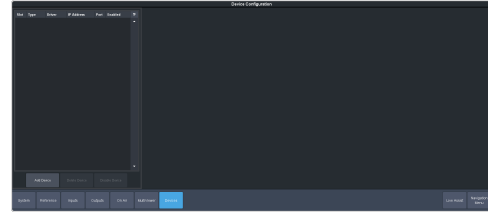
## Configuration

The Configuration node provides access to switcher settings such as Reference, Inputs, Outputs, and MultiViewer. You can switch between the different configurations by selecting the pages at the bottom of the DashBoard window.



## Devices

The Devices page on the Configuration node allows you to configure external devices to be controlled by the switcher.

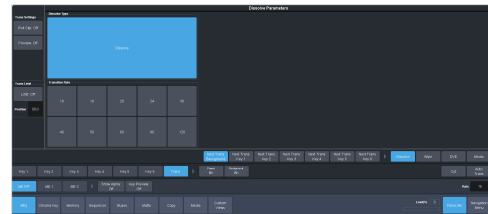


**Tip:** Click **Disable Device** to disable the selected device (does not apply to Audio Mixers).

**Tip:** You can apply a custom name to each device in the **Name** field. This name appears on the menus and allows you to quickly differentiate different devices of the same type, like cameras.

## Live Assist

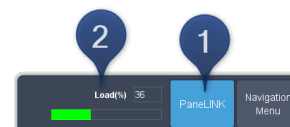
The Live Assist node provides access to operational functions such as keying, transition, and memory settings of the switcher. You can switch between the different settings by selecting the tabs at the bottom of the DashBoard window.



**Tip:** The **Custom View** button on the **Live Assist** page opens a separate page where you can set up custom DashBoard pages. These custom pages can also be set to auto follow specific video sources. This allows you to have Live Assist show a specific custom page when a video source is selected.

## PanelINK

1. The PanelINK button allows Live Assist to follow the button presses on the control panel and display the relevant tabs. For example, with **PanelINK** turned on, press **SEL** for any keyer and Live Assist shows the settings for that keyer. Press the **WIPE** buttons and Live Assist shows the transitions settings for a wipe. With **PanelINK** turned off, Live Assist does not switch between tabs.
2. The Performance meter shows the load that is being placed on the system resources by the actions you are performing.



**Note:** PaneLink only works on the Live Assist page.

## To Assign a Page to a Custom Page Button

The custom page buttons on the Live Assist page can be assigned any custom page or node in DashBoard. This allows you to quickly access controls from another device on DashBoard from Live Assist on your current device.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > Live Assist**.



2. Click on the **Address** drop-down list for the custom page button you want to assign to a page.
3. Select the connection or custom panel that you want to assign to the custom page button.

- **All Connections** — expand the list and select the device and node that you want to assign to the custom page button. Some older DashBoard nodes from plug-ins may not display properly on the Live Assist buttons.

**Note:** Do not assign the Live Assist page to a custom page on the same machine.

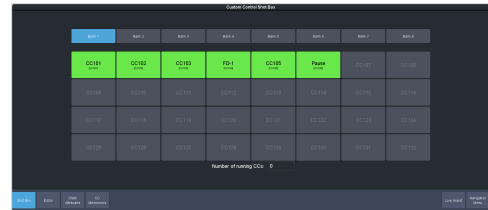
- **Open Panels** — expand the list and select the open custom panel you want to assign to the list. You must have the custom panel running on DashBoard for it to appear in the list.

**Tip:** Click **Clear** to remove the custom page and name assigned to that button.

4. Click on the name field for the custom page button you are assigning a page to and enter a descriptive name for the custom page. The name appears on the button in Live Assist.

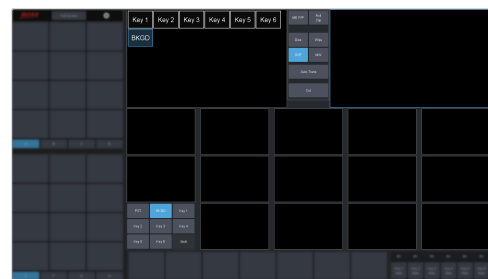
## Custom Controls

The Custom Control provides access to recording, editing, and running custom controls, as well as setting up the mnemonics for custom control on the TouchDrive control panel.



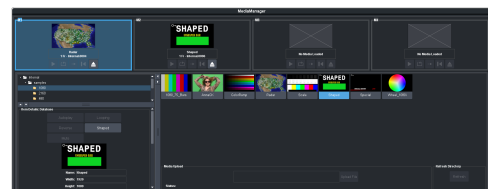
## ViewControl

The ViewControl interface through DashBoard allows you to coordinate the control over the switcher through a touchscreen interface. Through ViewControl you can select sources, perform transitions, and run custom controls.



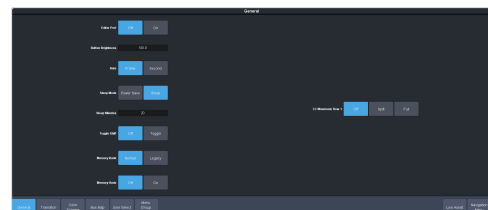
## MediaManager

The MediaManager node allows you to control the Media-Store of the switcher. Upload media items, load media to channels, and set database elements..



## Personality

The Personality node provides the switcher personality settings.

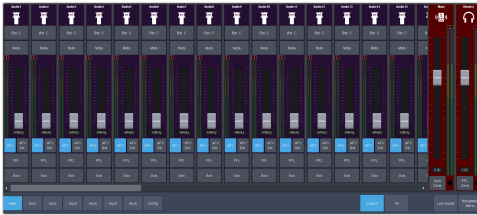


## Help

The help node in DashBoard launches the integrated help system with full search capability.

## Audio Mixer

The audio mixer node in DashBoard provides access to the RAVE audio mixer. An audio channel must be available to the switcher to be controlled by the audio mixer interface. Audio sources can be from the embedded audio on an input video stream or from a separate audio stream coming into the system.



## Menu Group Access

Disable certain menu groups to improve DashBoard performance.

Menu group access disables certain DashBoard menu groups for the DashBoard port (5253, 5255, 5256, or 5257) that you are using. When a menu group is disabled, the data for those menus are not sent to that port. Without the data the menus are grayed out and the nodes do not appear in the DashBoard tree view.

### Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when working with the menu group access:

- When you disable a menu group, the data for those menus are no longer sent to any DashBoard on the same port as you. This can greatly speed up DashBoard connection times.
- When you change a menu access setting, all DashBoard connections, on all ports, to that frame are reset and reconnect.
- If you disable a menu group, any controls on a CustomPanel that were added from that port will no longer function.
- If you are connecting to the switcher using Caprica or Lightning you should set all menu groups to **On** for the port they are connecting on.
- You cannot disable the Personality menu.
- The menu access settings are not stored with Personality in a switcher set.
- Menu access settings are persistent after a factory default.

- Any change to the menu access resets all DashBoard connections to the frame on all ports.
- A list of all DashBoard connection to the frame and the ports they are using is shown on the **Status** menu.

### To Set the Menu Access

Set menu access for all DashBoard connections on the same port.

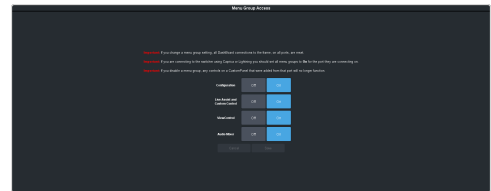


**Important:** Any change to the menu group access is applied to all DashBoard connections that are using that same port.



**Important:** If you change a menu group setting, all DashBoard connections to that frame, on all ports, are reset.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Personality > Menu Group Access**.



2. Click a button next to the Menu Group item to enable (**On**) or disable (**Off**) that menu group.



**Important:** If you are connecting to the switcher using Caprica or Lightning you should set all menu groups to **On** for the port they are connecting on.

- **Configuration** — turn the **Configuration** menus on or off.
  - **Live Assist and Custom Control** — turn the **Live Assist** and **Custom Control** menus on or off.
3. Click **Save** to apply the changes to all DashBoard connections using the same port.
  4. Click **OK**.

# Role Based Access Control

The Ross Platform Manager allows for user authentication and role based access through DashBoard. Once set up in DashBoard, Ross Platform Manager allows for control over who can control Carbonite Code based on the roles individual users are assigned to.

**Note:** Ross Platform Manager does not apply to operation of the switcher from a control panel.

**Tip:** For information on setting up a Ross Platform Manager server and creating user accounts, refer to the documentation that came with your Ross Platform Manager.

## To Turn on Role Based Access Control for Ross Platform Manager

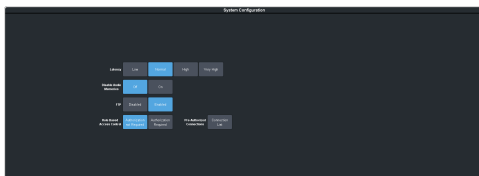
From DashBoard you can select whether the Role Based Access Control (RBAC) of Ross Platform Manager is applied to Carbonite Code.



**Important:** Changing the RBAC mode may restrict access to the switcher if your account is not assigned to a role that has the required permission.

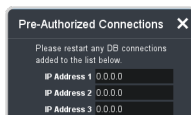
**Note:** RBAC settings are not stored in switcher sets or changed with a factory default.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > Global**



2. Click the **Pre-Authorized Connections** button and enter the IP address of any trusted DashBoard systems that you want to allow access to the switcher without RBAC permissions.

**Tip:** A common trusted system would be a TouchDrive control panel. This allows the control panel with a DashBoard interface to continue to control the switcher without the need for a user to log in.



3. Click a **Role Based Access Control** button to apply access control to the switcher.
  - **Authorization not Required** — RBAC is applied to the switcher, but not enforced.

Anyone can control the switcher through DashBoard.

- **Authorization Required** — RBAC is applied to the switcher and enforced. Only users with permission can control the switcher through DashBoard.

4. Click **OK** to reboot the switcher using RBAC permissions from Ross Platform Manager.

**Tip:** You may have to close and re-launch DashBoard to apply the access control.

## SoftPanel

SoftPanel provides you with a graphical interface to the menu system and control surfaces of the switcher. This allows you to setup and control the switcher without a control panel.



**Important:** SoftPanel is a separate panel connection to the frame. Refer to [MultiPanel](#) on page 88 for information on setting up SoftPanel.

The screen can be broken up into several different functional areas. Each of these areas allows you to interact with different aspects of the switcher interface.

### Menu Area

The menu area provides a graphic representation of the menu system on a Carbonite Black control panel. The **Select**, **Up**, and **Down** buttons represent the actions of turning and pressing the knobs on the panel. The buttons in the top right corner allow you to navigate around in the menu tree, and the stylized mnemonic buttons at the bottom allow you to access different menus.

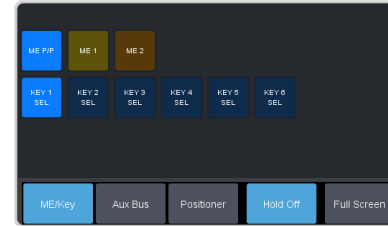


### User Area

The user area can be assigned to ME/Key, Aux, or the Positioner. Press the **ME/Key**, **Aux Bus**, or **Positioner** button to select how the user area appears.

#### ME/Key

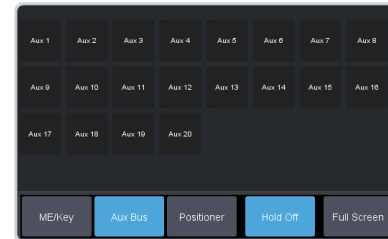
The **ME/Key** button allows you to select what the bus area is assigned to. Click **ME X** to assign the panel bus area to that output. Click one of the **Key X Sel** buttons to assign the key bus in the panel bus area to that key.



#### Aux Bus

The **Aux Bus** button allows you to select one of the aux buses that the key bus row in the bus area is assigned to.

**Note:** The selection of one of the aux bus or key select buttons indicated what the key bus in the bus area is assigned to. You may have to switch between the **ME/Key** and **Aux Bus** buttons to see where the bus is assigned.



#### Positioner

The **Positioner** button provides a virtual interface to the positioner. The positioner is used in device control, or to move keys or masks around. Click and hold the positioner and move it around to emulate moving the positioner around. The slider to the right of the positioner emulated twisting the positioner knob on the panel. The button to the left of the positioner emulates the button on the top of the positioner knob on the panel.



### Control Area

The control area (the upper right of the screen) contains the main Dashboard interface to the switcher. Click **Navigation Menu** and select the menu you want to navigate to. When the **Live Assist** menu is selected, the sub-menus will

---

follow actions in the bus area when **PanelLINK** is on.

## Bus Area

The bus area provides a graphic representation of the panel row on the switcher. Use the user area buttons to assign the bus area to an ME, key, and aux bus. Sources are then selected on the key, program, and preset buses, and transitions are set up and performed with the transition buttons to the right of the source selection buttons.

***Tip:** Use the **Hold On** or **2Press** buttons to emulate a press and hold of a button. This allows you to press and hold one button and then press another.*

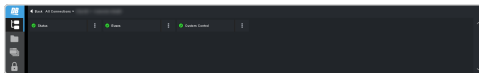


# Ultritouch

The 2RU rack mountable Ultritouch adaptable system control panel allows you to control some aspects of switcher operation using a DashBoard interface.

The DashBoard interface on Ultritouch provides status, buses, and custom control tabs. You must connect to the switcher from Ultritouch to be able to control the switcher functions. Refer to the Ultritouch documentation for information on navigating the Ultritouch menu and manually connecting to a device.

Once you are connected to the switcher, tap the **Connected Devices** button and select the switcher you want to control from the list and tap **Carbonite**. The available tabs for the switcher are listed. Tap one of the available tabs to open it.



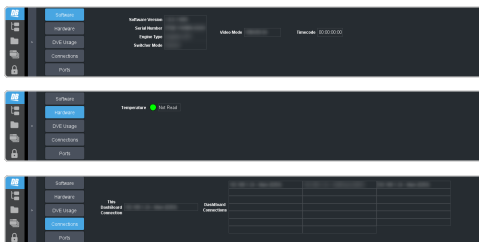
## Navigation Menu

Tap the > button on the left and tap the tab you want to navigate to.



## Status

This tab allows you to view status information for various switcher components. These tabs are the same as the **Switcher Status** tab from a DashBoard computer.



## Buses

This tab allows you to select sources on any bus on the switcher. This tab is this same as the **Bus Assignments** page from a DashBoard computer.

1. Tap the area and bus that you want to select a source on.
2. Tap the source that you want to select or tap **Exit** to close the popup.

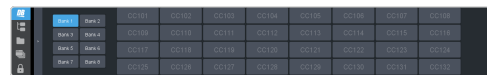
*Tip: The currently selected bus is shown at the upper left of the popup.*



## Custom Control

This tab allows you to run custom controls on the switcher. This tab is this same as the **Custom Control ShotBox** tab from a DashBoard computer. You cannot edit a custom control from this tab.

1. Tap the bank for the custom control you want to run.
2. Tap the custom control on the selected bank that you want to run.



---

## Audio and Video Processing

Video and audio signals are processed and passed through the switcher in different ways, depending on how the switcher is being used or is set up. A better understanding of how the switcher is processing these signals help you to achieve the production you want.

### Video Processing and Flow

Video comes into the switcher over NDI®. There are no processing blocks within the system to add video delay, but the more numerous the video streams, the more the system resources can be taxed which can degrade video quality.

### Audio Processing and Flow

Audio signals come into the system either embedded in the video input streams, from the Media-Store, or as an independent NDI® audio stream.



---

## Video Sources

The switcher has access to two basic types of video sources; external and internal.

All video sources can be assigned to video source buttons. By pressing a video source button on a bus, the video source assigned to that button is selected on that bus.

- **External** — External video sources come from cameras, video servers, character generators, or other external devices and come into the switcher through an NDI® stream.
- **Internal** — Internal video sources come from internally generated video, such as aux buses, re-entries, matte color, and black.
- **Follows** — Follow video sources allow you to have one bus follow what is selected on another bus. For example, you can assign an Aux Bus to follow ME 1 Background so that a source selected on the background bus of ME 1 is also selected on the Aux Bus.

4. Select the background, preset, or keyer bus that you want to select a source on. (ME only)

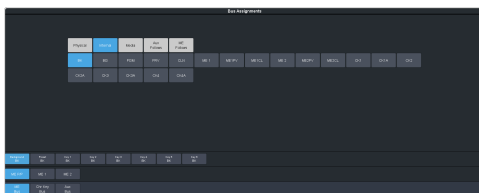
**Note:** Ensure that the source selected on the bus you want to enter onto the ME, aux, or keyer is valid for that destination. If the source is not valid, you will not be able to select the bus on the ME, Aux, or keyer.

5. Select the type of source you want to assign to the bus and then select the source.
  - **Physical** — the sources assigned to the numbered inputs of the switcher.
  - **Internal** — internally generated sources, including re-entries.
  - **Media** — the output of a Media-Store channel.
  - **Aux Follows** — use the source that is active on selected aux bus.
  - **ME Follows** — use the source that is active on selected ME bus.

## To Select a Source on a Bus from Dashboard

To select a video source on a bus, you must identify the ME and bus you want to assign a video source to, and then press the source button you want to select on that bus.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > Buses**.



2. Click **ME Bus**, **Chr Key Bus**, or **Aux Bus** to select the area that you want to select a source on. As you select different areas, the buses for that area are listed on the row above.
3. Click **MEX**, **CK X**, or **AuxX** to select the specific bus or area you want to select a source on. With an ME there is an additional selection of the keyer, background, or preset bus that you want to select a source on. The aux buses and chroma keys do not have these selections.

# Video Layering

How video is layered in the output of the switcher depends on how an ME is re-entered onto the other, and what keyers are on-air for the ME.

If we assume that each ME has all keyers on-air and that ME 2 is re-entered into ME 1, and ME 1 is re-entered into ME P/P, the layering will start with ME 2 Background and progress to ME P/P and the highest keyer.

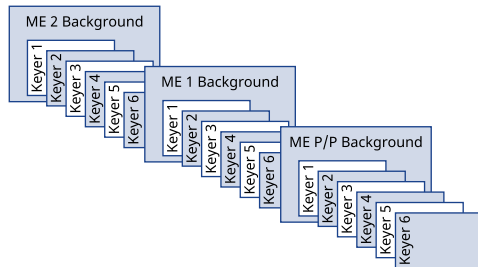


Figure 3: Video Layering

## Re-Entry

Re-entry is the term used to describe the process of selecting another ME on an ME. For example, if you select ME 1 on ME 2, ME 1 is said to be re-entered onto ME 2. Re-entry takes the output of an ME and uses it as the background or key on the other ME. If you select an ME on the background bus, the ME becomes background video source of the other ME. If you select an ME on a Key Bus, the ME becomes the key source of the other ME.

### Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when working with re-entries:

- You cannot re-enter an ME, or the Clean Feed of an ME, into itself.

### Re-Entry Timing

Any ME can go in any timing slot. MEs can only be re-entered in order from highest ME to ME P/P.

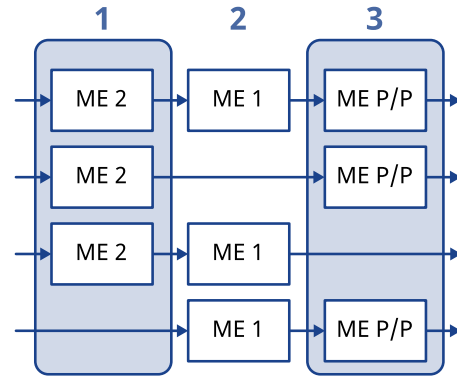


Figure 4: ME Timing Windows

### To Re-Enter an ME

The process to re-enter any bus onto another is the same as re-entering an ME onto another ME.

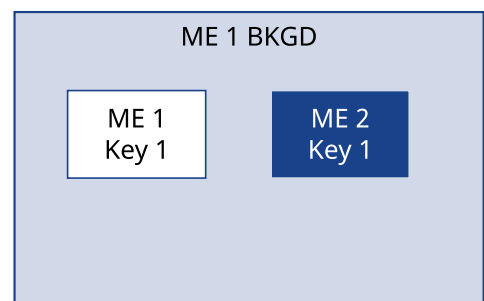
- Set up ME 1 with a background and a key.



- Set up ME 2 with a key.



- Select ME 1 as a source on the Background Bus of ME 2. Notice that the output of ME 1 is now being used as the background of ME 2.

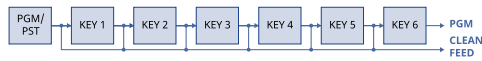


---

## FlexiClean Clean Feed

FlexiClean provides a second program output that is derived from a different location than the standard program output. A frequent application is the recording of shows for later airing without call-in phone numbers inserted.

The clean feed output can come from before or between the keyers.



---

## Video Preview

Video preview allows you to use an additional monitor to preview what the next shot is going to be.

The preview for an ME shows what is selected for the next transition on that ME. This includes the keys and background video sources that will be on-air after the next transition.

## MultiViewer

Each MultiViewer allows you to view up to 16 video sources (32 with Shift), in 45 different layouts, from a single output BNC. Any video source on the switcher, including ME Program and Preview can be routed to any box on the MultiViewer. All boxes on the MultiViewer output include mnemonic source names and red and green tallies.

Each MultiViewer head supports an integrated clock that can display time of day, timecode, or a countdown timer. The position, size, and color of the clock can be adjust.

---

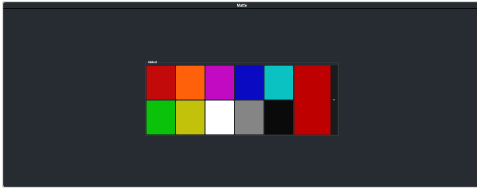
## Matte Source

Matte color backgrounds (**BG**) are color signals that can be applied to backgrounds and keys. Color selection is done either by picking a preset color, or by adjusted hue, saturation, and luminance to create a custom color.

Select the matte generator (**BG**) on a background or key bus. The full region of the background or key is filled with the selected color.

### To Set Up a Matte Color

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > Matte**.



2. Click one of the preset colors to assign that color to the selected matte generator.

***Tip:** You can select a custom color by clicking the color box to the right of the preset colors and selecting a new custom color. Toggle **Live** on to show the color changes live on the matte generator source.*

# Copying

You can copy the content of an ME or keyer to another ME or keyer.

## ME Copy

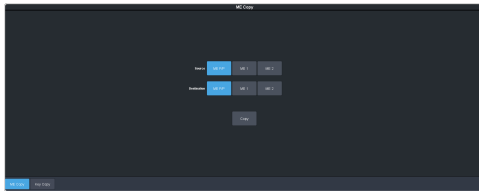
You can copy the entire contents of an ME to another. The entire contents of the destination is replaced with the contents of the source.

When you copy an ME, the switcher tries to assign resources to the destination ME to match the source ME. If these resources are not available, the switcher may need to steal resources.

### To Copy an ME

Copy the contents of an ME to another.

1. Click **Navigation Menu** > **Live Assist** > **Copy** > **ME Copy**.



2. Click a **Destination** button to select the destination that you want to copy to.
3. Click a **Source** button to select the source you want to copy.
4. Click **Copy**.

## Key Copy

You can copy the entire contents of a keyer to another keyer in the same, or a different ME. The entire contents of the destination keyer are replaced with the contents of the source keyer.

When you copy a key, the switcher tries to assign resources to the destination key to match the source key. If these resources are not available, the switcher steals resources in the following order:

1. From off-air keys that are not the source key.
2. From the source key, if it is not on-air.
3. From on-air keys that are not the source key.
4. From the source key, even if it is on-air.

### To Copy a Key

Copy the contents of a keyer to another.

1. Click **Navigation Menu** > **Live Assist** > **Copy** > **Key Copy**.



2. Click an **ME Destination** and **Key Destination** button to select the destination that you want to copy to.
3. Click an **ME Source** and **Key Source** button to select the source you want to copy.
4. Click **Copy**.

## Key Swap

You can swap the entire contents of any two keyers in the same, or different MEs. The video source, position, and key type are all swapped between keyers. This allows you to change the apparent key priority, or layering, of the keys in the video output. For example, key 3 appears over key 2. If you perform a swap between key 3 and key 2, it appears as if key 2 is now over key 3.

### Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when performing a key swap:

- Key swap does not change the on-air status of a keyer.
- A key swap can be recorded as part of a custom control.

### To Perform a Key Swap

This procedure swaps the contents of Key 2 and Key 3 as an example. Use the same procedure for any key combination.



**Important:** A control panel is required to perform this procedure. If you do not have access to a physical control panel, the SoftPanel can be used. The position of items on the menus on the SoftPanel may not match those of a physical panel.

1. Press and hold the **KEY 2 SEL** button.
2. Press the **KEY 3** button in the transition area.

# Transitions

Transitions are used to change the background video and take keys on and off-air. A transition can include any combinations of background and keyers for an ME. The background and each keyer can be transitioned independently.

## Performing Transitions

What you can include in the transition, and the type of transition you can perform, depend on the number of resources you have, and if you are performing a background and keyer transition at the same time.

### Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when performing transitions:

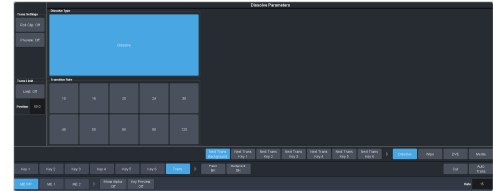
- If any of the sources going on-air are assigned to a video server, you can have the video server play when the source is taken on-air by toggling **Roll Clip** on.
- If any of the sources going on-air are assigned to a video server, the switcher waits for the configured pre-delay interval before performing the transition. If you perform a transition with the fader handle, the pre-delay interval is ignored.
- If the fader is moved during an auto transition, control of the transition is passed to the fader. You must complete the transition with the fader. This allows you to override any auto transition in progress with the fader.
- The **Cut** and **Auto** buttons can be used to transition keys independently.
- You can pause an auto transition by pressing the **Auto Trans** button during the transition. Press the button again to continue the transition.
- If you turn the Transition Limit off when the transition has stopped at the transition limit point, the next transition starts from the transition limit point and goes forward to complete the transition, instead of going back to the start.

### To Perform a Transition

All transitions, with the exception of cuts on the background or key bus, have the same basic setup. The touchscreen menu system offers the

touchscreen interface to setup and perform the transition.

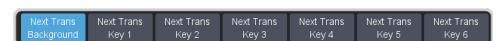
1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs**.



2. Click the **ME X** for the area you want to perform the transition on.
3. Select the video sources you want to take on-air on each bus. Background and keys are set up slightly differently but can be performed with the same transition.
  - **Background** — click **Trans > Preset** and select the new background source.
  - **Key On-Air** — click the **Key X > Key Fill** button for the key you want to take on-air and select the new source. Repeat this for each key you want to take on-air.
  - **Key Off-Air** — you don't need to select the keys at this point.

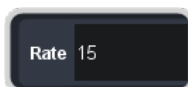
*Tip: Refer to [To Select a Source on a Bus from DashBoard](#) on page 25 for information on selecting sources.*

4. Click **Trans**.
5. In the Next Transition area, select the elements (Background and Keys) you want to include in the next transition. You can include any combination of background and keys, but at least one element must be selected.

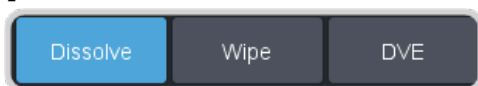


6. In the **Rate** field, enter the rate that you want the transition performed at. This is the speed, in frames, that it takes for the transition to complete. A Cut or manual fader transitions do not use the transition rate.
  - **Background** — enter a new ME transition rate, in frames, in the **Trans Rate** field.
  - **Key Only** — enter a new key transition rate, in frames, in the **Key X Rate** for the key you want to transition.

*Note: The key rate is only used for key only transitions. Keys included in with the background are transitioned at the ME Rate.*



7. In the Transition area, select the type of auto transition you want to perform. If you want to perform a cut you do not need to select a transition type and can move to the next step.



- **Dissolve** — perform a dissolve auto transition. Refer to [To Set Up a Dissolve](#) on page 36 for more information.
- **Wipe** — perform a wipe auto transition. Refer to [To Set Up a Wipe](#) on page 36 for more information.
- **DVE** — perform a DVE auto transition. Refer to [To Set Up a DVE Transition](#) on page 37 for more information.
- **Media** — perform a MediaWipe auto transition. Refer to [To Set Up a MediaWipe](#) on page 37 for more information.

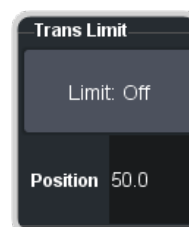
8. Click a **Trans Settings** button to turn the setting on or off. The options available depend on the type of transition selected.



- **Roll Clip** — select whether you want any video server clips assigned to a source being taken on-air to play with the transition (**On**), or not (**Off**).
- **Preview** — preview the transition on the preview output **On**. You cannot preview the independent key-only transitions or a MiniME™ transition.
- **Flip Flop** — select whether the wipe runs forward during the first transition and then reverse during the second (**On**), or if it always runs in the same direction (**Off**).

- **Direction** — select the direction that the wipe travels.

9. Click **Limit** to turn trans limit **On** or **Off**. Enter a value for the trans limit in the **Position** field to set the point in a transition where an auto transition stops. When active, the point in the transition where the auto transition will stop is indicated by a flashing segment on the transition progress bar next to the fader handle on the control panel. The auto transition proceeds to this point and stops. The second auto transition starts from the transition limit point and goes back to where the first transition started.

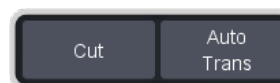


**Tip:** The **Limit Position** is a percentage with 0 being the starting point of the transition and 100 being the ending point of the transition.

10. Perform the transition.



**Important:** The **Cut** and **Auto** buttons trigger a transition on what has been selected. If **Trans** is selected a normal background transition is performed. If one of the keyers is selected (**Key X**) a key-only transition is performed on the selected key.



- **Auto Trans** — click **Auto Trans**
- **Cut** — click **Cut**

**Tip:** During an auto trans, press **Auto Trans** again to hold the transition at the current position or press **Cut** to abort the transition and return to the original source.

11. If a pre-delay has been set, and **Roll Clip** is active, the switcher will apply the pre-delay interval before performing the transition.

## To Perform a Transition on TouchDrive (Memory Area)

All transitions, with the exception of cuts on the background or key bus, have the same basic setup. The control panel offers physical buttons and mnemonics to setup and perform the transition. Some panels have a memory area that can be used to set the transition rates.

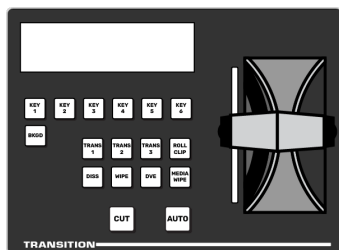


1. Select the preset or key sources that you want to transition to on the buses.

**Tip:** You can perform a quick, or hot, cut on the background bus by simply selecting a different source.

2. In the **Transition** area, select the elements you want to include with the transition. If you are including multiple elements, press and hold the first button and press the other buttons to include them in the same transition.

**Note:** A key should be included in the transition if it is going on-air or off-air. The transition changes the on-air state of the keyer. If a key is on-air, a red indicator is visible on the display just above the key and the **CUT** button for that key is red in the **Keyer** area.



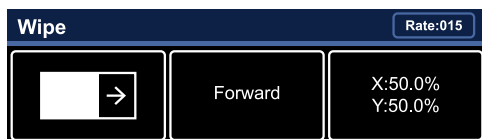
3. In the **Transition** area, select the type of auto transition you want to perform. Refer to the manual that came with your switcher for information on setting up these transitions.

- **DISS** — perform a dissolve transition
- **WIPE** — perform a wipe transition
- **DVE** — perform a DVE transition
- **MEDIA WIPE** — perform a MediaWipe transition

**Note:** The **TRANS X** buttons are configurable and can be assigned different functions.

4. The display in the **Transition** area shows the current setting for the transition type. Tap one of these settings to show additional options.

**Tip:** Live Assist follows the transition type selection and shows the settings for that transition type.

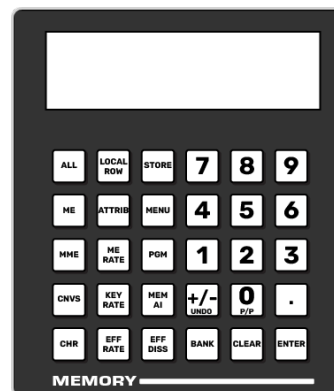


- **Left** — the left button shows the current pattern for the wipe or DVE transition. Tap the button and swipe left or right on the display to select a different pattern. For a MediaWipe the button shows the

name of the media item being used for the transition.

- **Center** — the center button shows the current direction for the wipe, DVE, or MediaWipe transition. Tap the button and select a different direction for the transition to be performed in.
- **Right** — the right button shows the current position of the pattern for the wipe transition or the settings for the MediaWipe transition. Tap the button to have the 3-knob display show the position setting of the pattern and use the positioner to move the pattern around.

5. In the **Memory** area, enter the rate that you want the transition performed at. This is the speed, in frames, that it takes for the transition to complete. A Cut or manual fader transition does not use the transition rate.



- **Background** — press **ME RATE** and use the keypad to enter a new rate, in frames, and press **ENTER**. The rate is shown on the display on the **Transition** area.
- **Key Only** — press **KEY RATE** and use the keypad to enter a new rate, in frames, and press **ENTER**. The rate is shown on the **Keyer** area for each individual key.

**Note:** The **KEY RATE** is only used for key only transitions. Keys included in with the background are transitioned at the **ME Rate**.

6. Perform the transition.

- **Auto Transition** — press **AUTO**. The transition is performed at the set transition rate.
- **Cut** — press **CUT**.
- **Fader** — move the fader from one limit to the other. The rate at which you push

the fader determines the speed of the transition.

7. If a pre-delay has been set, and the **ROLL CLIP** button is active, the switcher will apply the pre-delay interval before performing the transition.

## To Perform a Transition on TouchDrive (No Memory Area)

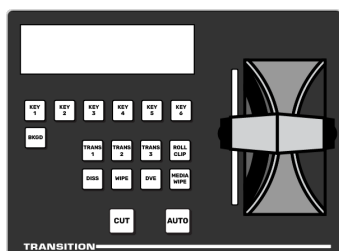
All transitions, with the exception of cuts on the background or key bus, have the same basic setup. The control panel offers physical buttons and mnemonics to setup and perform the transition.

1. Select the preset or key sources that you want to transition to on the buses.

**Tip:** You can perform a quick, or hot, cut on the background bus by simply selecting a different source.

2. In the **Transition** area, select the elements you want to include with the transition. If you are including multiple elements, press and hold the first button and press the other buttons to include them in the same transition.

**Note:** A key should be included in the transition if it is going on-air or off-air. The transition changes the on-air state of the keyer. If a key is on-air, a red indicator is visible on the display just above the key and the **CUT** button for that key is red in the **Keyer** area.



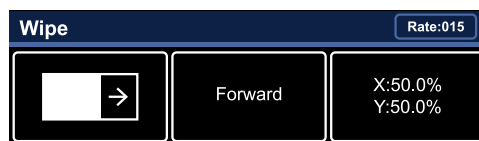
3. In the **Transition** area, select the type of auto transition you want to perform. Refer to the manual that came with your switcher for information on setting up these transitions.

- **DISS** — perform a dissolve transition
- **WIPE** — perform a wipe transition
- **DVE** — perform a DVE transition
- **MEDIA WIPE** — perform a MediaWipe transition

**Note:** The **TRANS X** buttons are configurable and can be assigned different functions.

4. The display in the **Transition** area shows the current setting for the transition type. Tap one of these settings to show additional options.

**Tip:** Live Assist follows the transition type selection and shows the settings for that transition type.

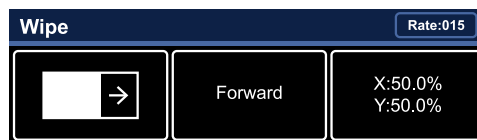


- **Left** — the left button shows the current pattern for the wipe or DVE transition. Tap the button and swipe left or right on the display to select a different pattern. For a MediaWipe the button shows the name of the media item being used for the transition.
- **Center** — the center button shows the current direction for the wipe, DVE, or MediaWipe transition. Tap the button and select a different direction for the transition to be performed in.
- **Right** — the right button shows the current position of the pattern for the wipe transition or the settings for the MediaWipe transition. Tap the button to have the 3-knob display show the position setting of the pattern and use the positioner to move the pattern around.

5. Set the rate for the transition you want to perform.

### • Background

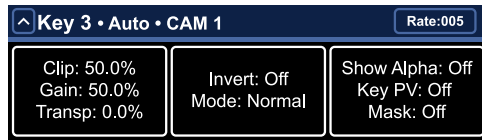
- a. On the Transition area tap **Rate** and use the 3-knob menu to enter the new rate.



### • Key Only

**Note:** The **KEY RATE** is only used for key only transitions. Keys included in with the background are transitioned a the **ME Rate**.

- a. On the Keyer area tap the key you want to set the rate for.



- b. Tap **Rate** and use the 3-knob menu to enter the new rate.
6. Perform the transition.
  - **Auto Transition** — press **AUTO**. The transition is performed at the set transition rate.
  - **Cut** — press **CUT**.
  - **Fader** — move the fader from one limit to the other. The rate at which you push the fader determines the speed of the transition.
7. If a pre-delay has been set, and the **ROLL CLIP** button is active, the switcher will apply the pre-delay interval before performing the transition.

## To Perform a Transition on Carbonite Black

All transitions, with the exception of cuts on the background or key bus, have the same basic setup. The control panel offers physical buttons and mnemonics to setup and perform the transition.

1. Select the preset or key sources that you want to transition to on the buses.

*Tip: You can perform a quick, or hot, cut on the background bus by simply selecting a different source.*

2. In the **Transition** area, select the elements you want to include with the transition. If you are including multiple elements, press and hold the first button and press the other buttons to include them in the same transition.

*Note: A key should be included in the transition if it is going on-air or off-air. The transition changes the on-air state of the keyer. If a key is on-air, a red indicator is visible just above the include button for that key and the **CUT** button for that key is red in the **Keyer** area.*

3. In the **Transition** area, select the type of auto transition you want to perform. Refer to the manual that came with your switcher for information on setting up these transitions.
  - **DISS** — perform a dissolve transition
  - **WIPE** — perform a wipe transition

- **DVE** — perform a DVE transition
- **MEDIA WIPE** — perform a MediaWipe transition

*Note: The **USER** button is configurable and can be assigned different functions.*

4. In the **Memory** area, enter the rate that you want the transition performed at. This is the speed, in frames, that it takes for the transition to complete. A Cut or manual fader transition does not use the transition rate.

*Note: If your control panel does not have a memory area, you can use the **Time** knob on the 3-knob menu, or **DashBoard**, to set the background transition rate.*

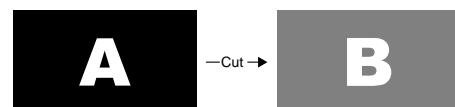
- **Background** — press **ME RATE** and use the keypad to enter a new rate, in frames, and press **ENTER**.
- **Key Only** — press **KEY RATE** and use the keypad to enter a new rate, in frames, and press **ENTER**.

*Note: The **KEY RATE** is only used for key only transitions. Keys included in with the background are transitioned at the **ME Rate**.*

5. Perform the transition.
  - **Auto Transition** — press **AUTO**. The transition is performed at the set transition rate.
  - **Cut** — press **CUT**.
  - **Fader** — move the fader from one limit to the other. The rate at which you push the fader determines the speed of the transition.
6. If a pre-delay has been set, and the **ROLL CLIP** button is active, the switcher will apply the pre-delay interval before performing the transition.

## Cut Transitions

A Cut is an instantaneous transition between video sources. Unlike all the other transition types, there are no intermediate steps between the video source that is on-air, and the video source you are transitioning to.



A cut is performed either by selecting different sources on a background or key bus, or by pressing a **Cut** button.

## Dissolve Transitions

A Dissolve is a gradual fade between video sources. For a Background transition, the video signal on the Background bus and the video signal on the Preset bus are mixed together until the Preset bus video signal completely replaces the Background bus video signal.



### To Set Up a Dissolve

A dissolve transition requires that you set a background and key transition rate for the auto transition. A fader transition does not use the transition rate.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the ME that you want to perform the transition on.
2. Click **Trans > Dissolve**, or press **DISS** in the **Transition** area on the control panel.



**Tip:** Click one of the **Transition Rate** buttons to quickly select the rate for the transition.

## Wipe Transitions

A Wipe is a gradual transition where one video signal is replaced with another according to a wipe pattern. In the example below, a line wipe is being used.



For Key transitions, the key is wiped on or off-air with the transition and the background remains untouched. The duration of a wipe transition depends on either the transition rate for the ME, or the rate at which the fader is moved.

### To Set Up a Wipe

A wipe transition requires that you select a wipe pattern, set the direction and number/size of wipe pattern, as well as set a background and key transition rate for the auto transition. A fader transition does not use the transition rate.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the ME that you want to perform the transition on.
2. Click **Trans > Wipe**, or press **WIPE** in the **Transition** area on the control panel.



3. In the **Wipe Pattern** area, select the pattern that you want to use for the wipe.
4. Set up the wipe pattern as required.
  - **Wipe Aspect** — adjust the aspect ratio of the wipe pattern. Not all patterns can be adjusted.
  - **H-Multiply** — multiply the pattern horizontally.
  - **V-Multiply** — multiply the pattern vertically.
  - **X-Position** — position the pattern on the x-axis.
  - **Y-Position** — position the pattern on the y-axis.
  - **Rotation** — rotate the pattern. Not all pattern can be rotated.
  - **Border Size** — apply a border to the pattern and adjust the size. At size 0 the border is off.
  - **Border Softness** — apply softness to the border.
  - **Border Color** — select a color for the border. You can choose between the predefined colors or use the color picker to select a custom color.

## DVE Transitions

A DVE transition is a gradual transition where one video signal is replaced with another according to a 2D DVE pattern.

### Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when performing DVE transitions:

- Performing a DVE transition on a DVE Key without including the background scales the transition effect to the size of the DVE Key. This transition does not consume an additional DVE resource.

- Performing a DVE transition on a DVE Key with the background included does not scale the transition effect. This transition consumes the second DVE resource.

## To Set Up a DVE Transition

A DVE transition requires that you select the DVE pattern and duration for the transition.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the ME that you want to perform the transition on.
2. Click **Trans > DVE**, or press **DVE** in the **Transition** area on the control panel.



3. Click a **DVE Pattern** button to select the DVE wipe pattern you want to use.

## MediaWipe Transitions

A MediaWipe allows you to use an animation to cover a transition. When the transition starts, the switcher plays the selected animation over top of the background and keys that are being transitioned. A MediaWipe can be used to cover a cut, dissolve, wipe, or DVE transition.

For a cut MediaWipe, the transition is performed when the cut point is reached. It is important to use a full-screen image in the animation at the cut point so that the cut is not visible on-air.

### Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when performing MediaWipe:

- Although you can select a still image for a media transition, it is not recommended.
- Only Auto Transition should be used for Media transitions. Using the fader to perform the transition manually could result in jumps in the animation.
- The duration of the transition (Time) is set by the length of the animation and the play speed of the animation.
- You cannot perform a MediaWipe transition on a MiniME™ or .
- Only Media-Store channels 1 and 2 can be used for a MediaWipe.

- The MediaWipe can be set to occur between any of the keys or the background. When you set the layer to a specific key, the MediaWipe animation will cover that key, even if the key is not part of the transition. The animation plays over the key, but the key remains after the animation is finished. Any keys above the MediaWipe layer remain on top of the animation.

## To Set Up a MediaWipe

A MediaWipe requires that you select the animation you want to use and then set up how you want to transition performed under the animation. This information is stored with the media item when you press save.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the ME that you want to perform the transition on.
2. Click **Trans > Media**, or press **MEDIA** in the **Transition** area on the control panel.



3. In the **Media Status** area, click a **Media X** button to select the channel you want to assign an animation to.
4. In the **Media Selection** area, click the thumbnail box for the animation you want to assign to the Media-Store channel.

**Tip:** Enter the media item number for a media item in the field below the thumbnail button assign that button to the media item.

5. In the **Trans Layer** area, select where the MediaWipe will occur.
  - **Auto** — MediaWipe occurs over highest number key in the transition.
  - **Bkgd** — MediaWipe occurs over the background, but under all keys.
  - **Key1** — MediaWipe occurs over the background and key 1, but under remaining keys.
  - **Key2** — MediaWipe occurs over the background and key 1 and 2, but under remaining keys.
  - **Key3** — MediaWipe occurs over the background and keys 1-3, but under key 4.



- **Key4** — MediaWipe occurs over the background and keys 1-4, but under key 5.
- **Key5** — MediaWipe occurs over the background and keys 1-5, but under key 6.
- **Key6** — MediaWipe occurs over the background and all keys.



**Important:** If a key is above the MediaWipe layer and included in the MediaWipe transition, it will cut off-air with the transition. This is normally covered by the animation when the layer is above the key.

select the position and click **Generate Thumbnail at Fader Position**.

10. Click **Save** to save the new setting to the selected media item.
11. Click **Exit Edit Media Trans**.

## 6. Click **Edit Media Trans**.



7. In the **Media Over** area, select the type of transition you want to use under the MediaWipe. This also allows you to set up the transition parameters for wipes and DVE transitions.
8. Click **Trans Time** and use the slider or fader in the **Transition** area on the control panel to set the start and end of the transition under the MediaWipe.
  - (Cut only) Use the **Cut Frame** slider to select the point for the cut, or move the fader to the point in the animation where you want the cut to happen and click **Cut at Fader Position**.
  - Use the **Start Trans At** slider to select the point where the transition starts, or move the fader to the point in the animation where you want the transition to start and click **Start Trans at Fader Position**.
  - Use the **Trans Rate** slider to select the duration of the dissolve, or move the fader to the point where you want the transition to end and click **End Trans at Fader Position**.

**Tip:** If you select a negative start point for the transition, the transition will start first and then the animation will play after the start point duration has passed.

9. Click **Thumbnail** and use the **Thumbnail** slider to select a point in the animation that you want to use as a thumbnail for the MediaWipe. You can also use the fader to

# Keying

Keying is the term used to describe when you insert (or electronically cut) portions of one scene into another, or place titles over background images. Keys are made up of two basic components, an alpha, that cuts the hole in the background video, and a fill, that fills the hole with different video.

Keys, like MEs, are layered onto the background video signal from the lowest numbered key to the highest on an ME.

**Note:** DashBoard Live Assist will not notify you of error messages or if a confirmation is required. For example, if there are no available resources for the DVE Key you are trying to create, the switcher will not create the key and no notification will be shown.

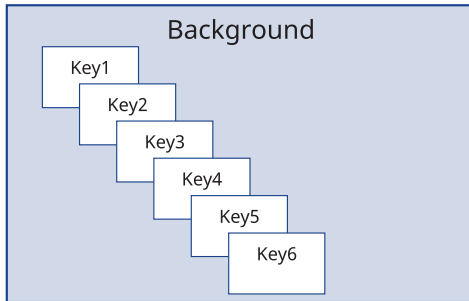


Figure 5: Key Priority

**Tip:** The Key Preview (**KEY PV**) button allows you to temporarily force the program output of the selected keyer to the preview output of the switcher. The ME remains in the key preview state for as long as you hold the **KEY PV** button, and returns to normal as soon as you release the button. You can also double-press the **KEY PV** button to latch the ME in the key preview state until the button is pressed again.

## Self Keys

A Self Key is a key in which the luminance, or brightness, values of the key source are used as the alpha for the key.

### To Set Up a Self Key

A self key is set up by selecting the keyer and video source you want to use, and adjusting the key parameters.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the ME and key that you want to set up.
2. Click **Key Video** and select the video signal you want to use for the key.
3. Click **Self Key**.



**Tip:** Click **Show Alpha** to have the preview output of the current ME switch to the alpha signal that is being used by the selected keyer.

**Tip:** Click **Key Preview** to force the program output of the selected keyer to the preview output of the switcher.

**Tip:** Click **Make Linear** to return the clip and gain values to the default settings.

4. Use the **Clip** slider to remove lower-saturated colors from the video image.
5. Use the **Gain** slider to adjust the transition between the video image and the parts of the video image that are removed.
6. Use the **Transparency** knob to adjust the transparency of the key from opaque (**0**) to fully transparent (**100**).
7. Click **Key Invert** to reverse the polarity of the key alpha so that the holes in the background are cut by dark areas of the key alpha instead of bright areas.
8. Click a **Keyer Mode** button to override the shaped setting for the key.
  - **Normal** — set to a linear keyer for an unshaped source.
  - **Additive** — set to an additive keyer for a shaped source. The **Key Invert** function is disabled in this mode.
  - **Full** — set the alpha to fully opaque (white). The **Clip**, **Gain**, **Make Linear**, and **Key Invert** functions are disabled in this mode.
9. Click **Mask** to apply a mask to the key.

## Auto Select Keys

An Auto Select key is a key in which two video signals are required to make the key. The alpha is used to cut the hole in the video and the fill is used to fill the hole. These signals often originate from external devices such as character generators, external still stores, or other graphics systems.

### To Set Up an Auto Select Key

An auto select key is set up by selecting the keyer and video source you want to use, and

adjusting the key parameters. The pairing of the video and alpha video signals is done when configuring video inputs. Refer to the Setup Manual that came with your switcher for information on setting up Auto Keys.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the ME and key that you want to set up.
2. Click **Key Video** and select the video signal you want to use for the key.
3. Click **Auto Select**.



**Tip:** Click **Show Alpha** to have the preview output of the current ME switch to the alpha signal that is being used by the selected keyer.

**Tip:** Click **Key Preview** to force the program output of the selected keyer to the preview output of the switcher.

**Tip:** Click **Make Linear** to return the clip and gain values to the default settings.

4. Use the **Clip** slider to remove lower-saturated colors from the video image.
5. Use the **Gain** slider to adjust the transition between the video image and the parts of the video image that are removed.
6. Use the **Transparency** knob to adjust the transparency of the key from opaque (0) to fully transparent (100).
7. Click **Key Invert** to reverse the polarity of the key alpha so that the holes in the background are cut by dark areas of the key alpha instead of bright areas.
8. Click a **Keyer Mode** button to override the shaped setting for the key.
  - **Normal** — set to a linear keyer for an unshaped source.
  - **Additive** — set to an additive keyer for a shaped source. The **Key Invert** function is disabled in this mode.
  - **Full** — set the alpha to fully opaque (white). The **Clip**, **Gain**, **Make Linear**, and **Key Invert** functions are disabled in this mode.
9. Click **Mask** to apply a mask to the key.

## Chroma Key

A Chroma Key is a key in which the hole is cut based on a color value, or hue, rather than a luminance value or alpha signal. The color is removed and replaced with background video from another source.

### Keep the following in mind:

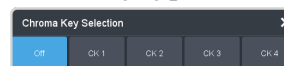
Keep the following in mind when working with a chroma key:

- The chroma key is applied to a video source. The Auto Select key type is automatically selected to take the chroma key on-air. The alpha for that video source will automatically be selected.
- The Color Picker of the chroma keyer appears on the active video of the source you are setting it up for. Do not use the color picker on a source that is on-air.

### To Set Up a Chroma Key

The chroma key must be enabled for the source you want to apply it to and then configured for the color you want to key out. The color to be keyed out can be selected from a color palette or an active video color picker.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the ME and key that you want to set up.
2. Click **Key Video** and select the video signal you want to use for the key.
3. Click **Chroma Key** and click **CKX** for the chroma keyer you want to use. Notice that both the **Auto Select** and **Chroma Key** buttons are on. The chroma key uses an auto select key as the key type.



**Tip:** Click **Show Alpha** to have the preview output of the current ME switch to the alpha signal that is being used by the selected keyer.

**Tip:** Click **Key Preview** to force the program output of the selected keyer to the preview output of the switcher.

**Tip:** You can also select the chroma keyer as a source on the key bus and click **Chroma Key** to navigate to the **Chroma Key Parameters** page. You can also press the user select button assigned to the chroma key or press and hold the **CHR KEY** button and press the corresponding keyer button.

4. Click **CK Params**.





5. In the **Background Color** area, drag the crosshair to a postilion on the image that you want to key out, or remove.

**Tip:** If you do not see the crosshairs on the image, ensure that **Show Color Picker** is toggled on (selected).



6. Click **Pick Color** to initialize the chroma key with the selected color. The selected color appears in the long box at the bottom of the **Background Color** area.

**Note:** You can click on one of the **Background Color** presets to use that color to initialize the chroma key.

7. Adjust the chroma key as required.

**Tip:** Click **Reset Parameters** to reset all the chroma key parameters except for the background color. The selected chroma key **Background Color** is not affected by the reset.

Parameter	Description
Chroma Angle	Adjust the range of hues around the selected key color that are removed from the foreground image. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increasing the angle removes more hues from the foreground image.</li> <li>Decreasing the angle removed fewer hues from the foreground image.</li> </ul>
Edge	Adjust the width of the edge of the alpha around the foreground image. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increasing the edge brings the edge of the key into the foreground image.</li> <li>Decreasing the edge pushes the edge of the key onto the background image.</li> </ul>
Edge Hardness	Adjust the softness of the edges of the foreground image. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increasing the hardness reduces the softness applied to the edges of the foreground image.</li> <li>Decreasing the hardness increases the softness applied to the edges of the foreground image.</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description
FG Clipping (Foreground Clipping)	Adjust the range of colors that are included in the foreground image. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increasing the FG clipping removes lower-saturation colors from the foreground image.</li> <li>Decreasing the FG clipping adds lower-saturation colors to the foreground image.</li> </ul>
Range	Adjust the range of hues within the chroma angle that can be desaturated from the foreground image. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increasing the range increases the range of hues that can be desaturated.</li> <li>Decreasing the range decreases the range of hues that can be desaturated.</li> </ul>
Desaturation	Adjust the saturation of the hues within the selected range in the foreground image. This can be used to reduce color spill of the background onto the foreground image. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increasing the desaturation reduces the saturation of hues within the selected range in the foreground image.</li> <li>Decreasing the desaturation increases the saturation of hues within the selected range in the foreground image.</li> </ul>
Clip Low	Adjust the lower limit for luminance to clip lower luma values from the foreground image. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increasing the lower luminance level clips more luminance from the lower (black) end of the scale.</li> <li>Decreasing the lower luminance level clips less luminance from the lower (black) end of the scale.</li> </ul>
Clip High	Adjust the upper limit for luminance to clip higher luma values from the foreground image. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increasing the upper luminance level clips more luminance from the upper (white) end of the scale.</li> <li>Decreasing the upper luminance level clips less luminance from the upper (white) end of the scale.</li> </ul>
Clip Softness	Adjust the softness of both the high and low luminance clipping. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increasing the clip softness applies more softness the upper luminance clipping.</li> <li>Decreasing the clip softness applies more softness the lower luminance clipping.</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description
Sharpen Range	<p>Adjust the range of hues within the background image that sharpness will be applied to.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increasing the sharpen range increases the range of hues that sharpness will be applied to.</li> <li>Decreasing the sharpen range decreases the range of hues that sharpness will be applied to.</li> </ul>
Sharpen	<p>Adjusts the amount of sharpness that is applied to the background image within the sharpen range.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increasing sharpness increases details in the background image.</li> <li>Decreasing sharpness lowers details in the background image.</li> </ul>
Soften	<p>Adjust the amount of softness that is applied to the background image within the sharpen range.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Increasing softness applies more blur to the background image.</li> <li>Decreasing softness applies less blur to the background image.</li> </ul>

## DVE Keys

The DVE key allows you to apply digital video effects, such as scale, crop, aspect ratio, position, and border to a video image or another key type. When the DVE is applied to another key type, it is said to be flying (Fly Key).

### Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when working with a Fly Key:

- The Fly Key feature consumes a single DVE channel for self keys, but two DVE channels for an auto select key.

### To Set Up a DVE Key

The DVE engine allows you to apply digital video effects, such as scale, crop, aspect ratio, position, and border to a video image in 2D space.

The DVE resources for this key may not be available. Depending on how your switcher is configured, you may be asked to steal the resources from another element, or be prevented from using the resources.

- Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the ME and key that you want to set up.

- Click **Key Video** and select the video signal you want to use for the key.
- Click **DVE Key > Position / Crop**.



**Tip:** Click **Show Alpha** to have the preview output of the current ME switch to the alpha signal that is being used by the selected keyer.

**Tip:** Click **Key Preview** to force the program output of the selected keyer to the preview output of the switcher.

- Use the **X-Position**, **Y-Position**, and **Size** sliders in the **Positioning** area to position and size the key.
- Use the **Aspect** slider to adjust the aspect ratio of the key.
- Use the **Left** and **Right** sliders to crop the left and right sides of the key.
- Use the **Top** and **Bottom** sliders to crop the upper and lower sides of the key.
- Click **Mask** to apply a mask to the key.

Refer to the section [To Apply a Border/Edge Softness to a DVE Key](#) on page 43 for information on applying a border to the key.

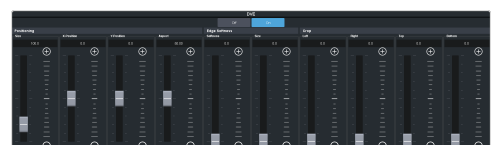
### To Apply a DVE to a Key (Fly Key)

The Fly key is when the DVE engine is applied to another key type.

The DVE resources for this key may not be available. Depending on how your switcher is configured, you may be asked to steal the resources from another element, or be prevented from using the resources.

You should set up your key as you want it before applying the Fly Key.

- Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the ME and key that you want to set up.
- Click **DVE** and click **On**.



- Use the **X-Position**, **Y-Position**, and **Size** sliders in the **Positioning** area to position and size the key.

4. Use the **Aspect** slider to adjust the aspect ratio of the key.
5. Use the **Size** and **Softness** sliders in the **Edge Softness** area to apply softness to the edges of the key.

Refer to the section [To Apply a Border/Edge Softness to a DVE Key](#) on page 43 for information.

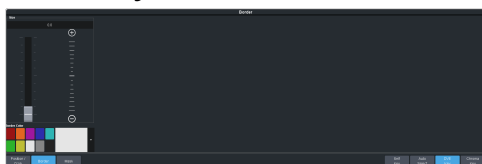
6. Use the **Left** and **Right** sliders to crop the left and right sides of the key.
7. Use the **Top** and **Bottom** sliders to crop the upper and lower sides of the key.

### To Apply a Border/Edge Softness to a DVE Key

A DVE border or edge softness is applied to the edges of the DVE key and is manipulated as part of the key.

**Note:** You can only apply a border to a DVE key. Fly Keys, such as auto select keys with DVE applied to them cannot have a border applied to them. Instead, the selection is Edge Softness and is used to soften the edges of the key without any color.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the ME and key that you want to set up.
2. Click **DVE Key > Border**.



- 3.
4. Select a default or custom color for the border (borders only).
  - **Default** — click one of the preset colors.
  - **Custom** — click the arrow to the right of the **Border Color** area and use the **Hue**, **Saturation**, and **Lightness** sliders to select your own color. Click **OK** to apply the color or **Live** to apply it in real-time.

## Show Alpha

You can route the processed alpha for the selected keyer to the preview output for the ME you are working on.

- Select the keyer that you want to show the alpha for and press and hold the **SHOW ALPHA** button on the control panel. The

preview output of the ME shows the processed alpha of the selected key until the button is released.

- Select the keyer that you want to show the alpha for and double-press the **SHOW ALPHA** button. The preview output of the ME shows the processed alpha of the selected key until the button is pressed again.
- Toggle the **Show Alpha** button on from Live Assist.

## Masks

A Mask is a technique in which a pattern is combined with the key source to block out unwanted portions of the key source.

A Box mask uses a simple box shape to mask out a portion of the key. All key types can be masked.

### To Box Mask a Key

Box masks can be adjusted for size, location, rotation, and multiplication.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the ME and key that you want to set up.
2. Click **Mask > Box**.



3. Click **Mask Force** to force the area inside the mask region to the foreground.

**Note:** This option is not available on a DVE key.

4. Click **Mask Invert** to invert the masked area with the unmasked area.
5. Set up the mask as required.

Parameter	Description
Size	Adjust the size of the mask region.
Left Edge	Adjust the position of the left edge of the mask region.
Right Edge	Adjust the position of the right edge of the mask region.
Top Edge	Adjust the position of the top edge of the mask region.
Bottom Edge	Adjust the position of the bottom edge of the mask region.

---

Parameter	Description
X-Position	Position the mask on the x-axis. This adjust both the left and right edges at the same time.
Y-Position	Position the mask on the y-axis. This adjusts both the top and bottom edges at the same time.
Edge Softness	Apply softness to the edges of the mask region.

***Tip:** You can use the Positioner to adjust the size and position of the box mask.*

## Split Keys

A Split key allows you to assign a different alpha source for a key than the fill/alpha associations that are set up during configuration, or to use a separate alpha source for a Self key.

A split key can be applied to an auto select, or self key.

### To Set Up a Split Key

A split key works on an **Auto Select** or **Self Key** that has been set up and you want to apply a different alpha to.

1. Set up your key with the video source you want to use.
2. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > MEs** and select the key you want split.

***Tip:** From the control panel, press and hold the **SELF** or **AUTO** (depending on the type of key you are splitting) and press the source button for the new alpha you want to use.*

3. Click **Key Alpha** and select the new alpha you want to use.

# Memory Functions

A memory register is a snapshot of the current state of the switcher that can include one or multiple MEs. Up to 100 memory registers per ME can be stored and recalled on the switcher. Each of these memory registers can store as little as the information of one ME, or as much as the current state of the entire switcher, including all MEs, Aux Buses, and DVE settings.

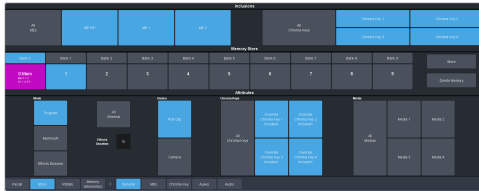
## Storing Memories

When you store a memory, you are storing the complete state of that area. This includes the current state of all the components of the ME, including keyer settings, transition rates, wipe and pattern selections, and source selections.

### To Store a Memory

How to store a memory.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > Memory > Store > General**.



2. In the **Inclusions** area, select the MEs and Chroma Keys that you want to store the memory for. When you include an area in a memory, the current state of that area is stored in the memory and will be recalled with the memory.
3. In the **Memory Store** area, click the **Bank X** and **X:Mem** button for the bank and memory register that you want to store to.

**Tip:** If a memory register contains a memory for the area(s) selected in the **Inclusions**, the button glows purple and the areas that the register contains a memory for are listed below the memory number. The currently selected memory register glows blue.

4. Select the recall mode for the memory. This is the mode that is stored in the memory, but can be overridden when the memory is recalled.
  - **Program** — all elements are recalled as stored (default).
  - **MemoryAI** — current on-air elements are unchanged and the transition area is configured to take the on-air elements of

the memory on-air with the next transition.

- **Effects Dissolve** — on-air elements listed below are transitioned to the elements stored in the memory. The time it takes to go from the current elements to the elements in the memory is set in the **Effects Duration** field.
  - Matte colors (background, wash or borders)
  - Keyer settings like clip, gain, transparency
  - Mask position and size
  - Chroma key settings, except the background color
  - Pattern settings like size, position, aspect, border, softness, rotation
  - DVE settings like size, position, aspect, border, softness, cropping
  - Media-Store x/y position
  - Transition Progress

5. Set the memory attributes that you want recalled with the memory. Refer to [Memory Attributes](#) on page 46 for information on memory attributes.

**Tip:** All attributes are stored in the memory. Turning individual attributes on or off sets whether that item is included with the memory recall. Individual attributes can be turned on or off when the memory is recalled.

6. Click **Store** to store the memory.

## Recalling Memories

When you recall a memory, the existing configuration of that ME is replaced with the settings stored in the memory.

### Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when recalling memories:

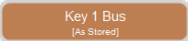
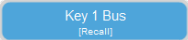
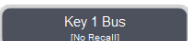
- How a memory is recalled depends on the how the Memory Attributes are set.
- Recalling a memory that includes a source assigned to a camera also recalls the shot stored in the memory for that camera if the **Camera** memory attribute is set to **Recall**. There is no delay in the memory recall so camera movement may be visible while the shot is recalled.
- You can override the video source stored in a memory by pressing and holding a source



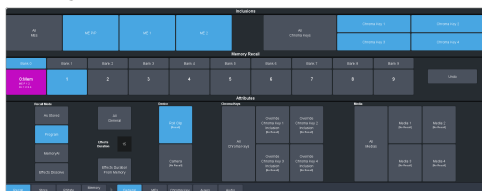
- Enabling Memory AI mode changes the way key elements are recalled. If a key is currently on-air, the element for that key is recalled in the next available off-air key. If there is no available off-air keys, the element is not recalled.
- If **Disable Audio Memories** is set to **On** (Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > Global**) the audio memory attributes are disabled.

*Memory Attributes* on page 46

For a memory recall you can set individual attributes to be recalled or not, regardless of how they were stored. How the attribute is recalled is indicated by the color of the attribute button.

Color	Description
 <p>Key 1 Bus (As Stored)</p>	<b>As Stored</b> — the memory attribute is recalled exactly as it was stored in the memory.
 <p>Key 1 Bus (Recall)</p>	<b>Recall</b> — the memory attribute is recalled with the memory, even if the attribute was not set to be stored with the memory.
 <p>Key 1 Bus (No Recall)</p>	<b>No Recall</b> — the memory attribute is not recalled with the memory, even is the attribute was set to be stored with the memory.

## How to recall a memory using DashBoard.



In addition to setting which sources to recall with the memory, effects such as performing an auto transition after the memory recall or running a custom control after the memory recall, can also be included.

Memory attributes can be set both when the memory is stored, and when it is recalled. This allows you to store a set of attributes with a memory and then recall it as stored, or override the attributes stored in the memory and apply different ones when the memory is recalled. A memory attribute does not need to be stored in the memory to be recalled.

**Tip:** It is recommended that if you are new to working with memories, use the memory store attributes to set how you want a memory to be recalled and set the recall attributes to be **Memory**.

## To Set the Memory Attributes

Memory attributes can be set when the memory is stored or when it is recalled. This procedure sets the store attributes, but the information applies to both.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > Memory > Store**.
2. Click **General** and set the attributes as required.



**Note:** For information on the recall mode (**Program/MemoryAI/Effects Dissolve**) refer to **To Store a Memory** on page 45.

- **Roll Clip** — set whether a play command is triggered when a source that is assigned to a video server is recalled.
  - **Camera** — set whether camera shots are recalled.
3. Click **MEs > ME X** for the ME you want to set the attributes for. The attributes for each ME are separate and must be set for each ME you want to include in the memory.



- **Trans Area** — set how the next transition type and parameters are recalled.

- **Next Trans** — set how the next transition area is recalled.
- **Run Auto** — set whether a transition is performed after the memory is recalled. (Not available during Effects Dissolve transitions.)
- **Background Bus** — set how the sources selected on the background bus are recalled.
- **PST Bus** — set how the sources selected on the preset bus are recalled.
- **Shared Pattern** — set whether the settings for the shared Key Mask/Wash pattern generator is recalled.
- **Key X Bus** — set whether the source selected on the key bus is recalled.
- **Key X Active** — set whether the on-air status of the key is recalled.
- **Key X Type** — set whether the key type is recalled.
- **Key X Mask** — set whether mask settings for the key are recalled.

4. Click **Chroma Key > CK X** for the Chroma Key you want to set the attributes for.



- **Source** — set whether the source selected on the chroma key bus is recalled.
- **Parameters** — set whether chroma key settings are recalled.

5. Click **Auxes**.



- **Aux X** — set whether the source selected on the aux bus is recalled.

6. Click **Audio**.

**Note:** If **Disable Audio Memories** is set to **On** (Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > Global**) the audio memory attributes are disabled.



- **Main** — set whether the configuration of the main audio mix is recalled.
- **Monitor** — set whether the configuration of the monitor audio mix is recalled.
- **Aux X** — set whether the configuration of the aux audio mix is recalled.

# Deleting a Memory

You can delete the contents of a single memory. Only one memory can be cleared at a time, and you cannot undo the deletion.

*Tip:* You can clear all memories from the switcher from the control panel. (Press **MENU** > **Reset** > **NEXT** > **NEXT**.)

## To Delete a Memory

Delete an individual memory or bank.

- 1. Click **Navigation Menu** > **Live Assist** > **Memory** > **Store**
- 2. In the **Memory Store** area, click the **Bank X** and **Mem X** button for the memory register that you want to delete.
- 3. Click **Delete Memory**.

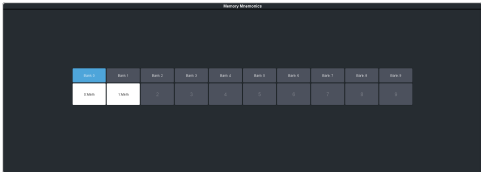
# Memory Names and Mnemonics (TouchDrive only)

Assign custom mnemonic colors and names to individual memories. These are only visible on the TouchDrive panel when the user select bus is assigned to a memory bank,

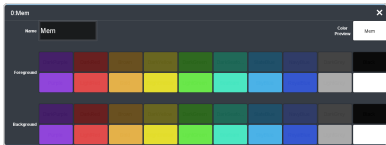
## To Assign a Name to a Memory

Memories can have custom names and colors on the TouchDrive control panel.

- 1. Click **Navigation Menu** > **Live Assist** > **Memory** > **Memory Mnemonics**.



- 2. Click **Bank X** to select the bank that the memory you want to name is on.
- 3. Click the memory you want to name.



Setting	Description
Name	Enter a new name for the selected memory.
Foreground	Click a <b>Foreground</b> button to select the color you want to apply to the text on the mnemonic.

Setting	Description
Background	Click a <b>Background</b> button to select the color you want to apply to the background on the mnemonic.



# Audio Mixer

The audio mixer node in DashBoard provides a graphical interface to all the audio sources and mixer layers. An audio channel must be routed to the switcher to be controllable by the audio mixer interface.

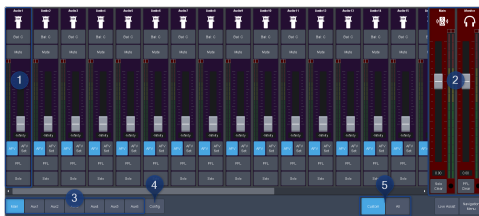
**Note:** The audio mixer interface is only available in DashBoard.

## Sample Rate Conversion

Integrated sample rate converters can convert audio coming in on NDI® streams to 48kHz.

## Audio Mixer Interface

The audio mixer interface allows you to control the mix levels for all the incoming channels to a mix layer, as well as the main level for the output of that layer. The **Main** layer also has a monitor output and level.



1. **Audio Channel Strips** — Each strip controls the input from that audio channel. Strips are color coded for where the audio comes from. The controls available on each strip depend on how the audio fader is configured.

- **Bal/Pan:** — adjust the balance or pan of the audio source. Whether Balance or Pan is applied to the audio source is determined automatically based on the audio source assigned to the fader.
  - **Balance** — the volume of the left and right stereo channel. For example, as you move the slider to the right the volume of the right channel is increased and the volume of the left channel is decreased.
  - **Pan** — the amount of the left or right input channel that is part of each channel before the mixer. For example, as you move the slider to the right you get more of the left channel in the right channel and the volume of the left channel decreases.

- **Tone** — plays out a tone on the channel. This can help identify that a channel is being routed correctly in the mixer. The frequency of the test tone is set from the **Audio Mixer Configuration** page.

**Tip:** Shortcut buttons are also provided on the **Balance** window for **NG/Ducking**, **EQ**, **Compression Limiter**, and **Config**. These buttons jump directly to the corresponding setup pages for the channel you are on.

- **Mute** — turn off the audio from this source. This does not change the level.
- **Pre/Post** (Aux only) — select whether the audio source on an **Aux** layer is taken before the fader (**Pre**) or after (**Post**) the source fader. If an audio source is taken before the fader, the source fader has no impact on the level of the audio going out the aux layer.
- **Fader** — adjust the level of the audio from the source. You can either move the fader manually or enter a value in the text field at the bottom of the slider.
- **AFV** (Main only) — turn Audio Follow Video (AFV) on or off for this audio source. AFV is only available for audio that is associated with a video source. When AFV is on, the audio level is taken to the **AFV Set** level when the associated video source is taken on-air. The audio level is taken to **-infinity** when the video source is taken off-air.
- **AFV Set** (Main only) — the maximum level that you want the audio to rise to when the associated video source is taken on-air. To set the AFV level, move the slider to the level you want the audio to be at and click **AFV Set**. The **AFV Set** button turns on when the slider is at the AFV set level.
- **PFL** — turn Pre Fader Listen (PFL) on or off for this audio source. This is similar to solo in that it mutes all other sources, but the audio source is taken before the fader where solo takes the audio after the fader. PFL hears the raw audio level coming into the mixer and solo hears the audio at the level the fader is set to. When **PFL** is turned on for a source a warning light flashes red on the monitor strip.
- **Solo** — mute all other audio sources but the one(s) you turn solo on for. This

allows you to quickly isolate a source without having to mute all the other sources. When **Solo** is turned on for a source a warning light flashes red on the main strip.

**Tip:** You can move a fader at any time to bring up an audio source even if the associated audio source is not on-air. This audio source will remain at the selected level until it is brought down again manually or is included in a transition with **AFV** turned on.

2. **Main Level Controls** — The Main and Monitor strips control the levels of the output audio for the mixer. If you select an Aux output this strip changes to control the level for that output.
  - **Effects** — click the **Compressor Limiter** button to jump directly to the corresponding setup pages for the effect you are applying to the output.
  - **Monitor Source** (Monitor only) — select the audio source for the monitor output.
  - **Fader** — adjust the level of the audio output. You can either move the fader manually or enter a value in the text field at the bottom of the slider.
  - **PFL/Solo Clear** (Monitor only) — turn solo off for all sources on this audio layer.
3. **Layer Controls** — select the audio layer that you want to control. Each layer is assigned to an audio output.
4. **Configuration** — open the audio mixer configuration page.
5. **Included Channels** — select whether only the audio sources that have been assigned to each layer are shown (**Custom**), or whether all audio sources are shown (**All**).

## Audio Mixer Setup

The audio mixer has up to 7 mixer layers that can be configured for which inputs are available to them and which physical outputs they are routed to.

The audio mixer supports up to 48 configurable faders. Each fader can be assigned any audio source in the mixer.

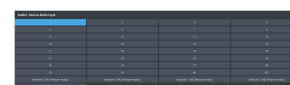
### To Set Up Audio Faders

Assign audio sources to each fader in the mixer.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Audio Mixer > Config**.

	Fader Source	Label	Audio Source	Delay (ms)	AFV Trans	AFV Trigger
1	1	Audio1	1-2	0	Fade	1 Src
2	2	Audio2	1-2	0	Fade	1 Src
3	3	Audio3	1-2	0	Fade	1 Src
4	4	Audio4	1-2	0	Fade	1 Src
5	5	Audio5	1-2	0	Fade	1 Src
6	6	Audio6	1-2	0	Fade	1 Src
7	7	Audio7	1-2	0	Fade	1 Src
8	8	Audio8	1-2	0	Fade	1 Src
9	9	Audio9	1-2	0	Fade	1 Src
10	10	Audio10	1-2	0	Fade	1 Src
11	11	Audio11	1-2	0	Fade	1 Src
12	12	Audio12	1-2	0	Fade	1 Src
13	13	Audio13	1-2	0	Fade	1 Src
14	14	Audio14	1-2	0	Fade	1 Src
15	15	Audio15	1-2	0	Fade	1 Src
16	16	Audio16	1-2	0	Fade	1 Src
17	17	Audio17	1-2	0	Fade	1 Src

2. In the **Fader Config** area, click the **Fader Source** button for the fader you want to assign an audio source.



Assign an audio source to the fader or select **Off** to turn the audio fader off.

**Tip:** You can rename a fader by entering a new name in the **Label** field.

3. Click the **Audio Source** button and click the stream pair that you want to use.

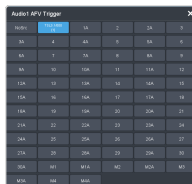
Audio1 Source Audio Channel		
Stereo	Mono Left	Mono Right
1-2	1-1	2-2
3-4	3-3	4-4
5-6	5-5	6-6
7-8	7-7	8-8
9-10	9-9	10-10
11-12	11-11	12-12
13-14	13-13	14-14
15-16	15-15	16-16

- **Stereo** — select the stereo pair that you want to use.
  - **Mono Left** — select the left mono pair you want to use. The left channel audio is put on both the left and right channels.
  - **Mono Right** — select the right mono pair you want to use. The right channel audio is put on both the left and right channels.
4. Click the **Delay (ms)** field and enter a delay value (**0-20,000** ms) to align the audio to the video signal, if needed.
  5. Toggle the **AFV Trans** button to either have the audio sources fade in and out (**Fade**) or have a cut between the audio sources (**Cut**) when the associated video source is taken on or off-air.

- **Fade** — the audio source level is taken down (going off-air) or up (going on-air) as the transition progresses. The rate of the audio fade is tied to the length of the video transition.
- **Cut** — the audio source is cut on-air at the beginning of the transition (going on-air) or cut off-air at the end of the transition (going off-air).

**Note:** Each audio source is transitioned according to how the AFV transition is set. For example, if Audio 1 is set to Cut and Audio 2 is set to Fade and you perform a transition from Audio 1 to Audio 2, Audio 1 will remain on and cut off at the end of the transition and Audio 2 will fade in through the transition.

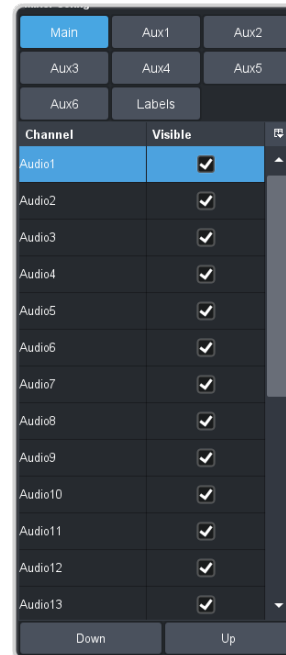
6. Click the **AFV Trigger** button and select the video source(s) that you want the audio transitions to follow. By default, the audio follows the video it is embedded in. You can select multiple sources.



## To Assign Audio Channels to Mix Layers

Select which audio sources are visible on each mixer layer.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Audio Mixer > Config**.
2. In the **Mixer Config** area, click the mixer layer tab (**Main**, **Aux X**) you want to show or hide audio faders on.

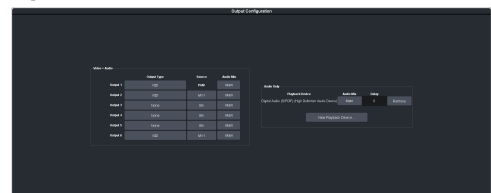


3. Uncheck the **Visible** box to hide a fader on the selected layer.
4. Change the order of the audio faders on the mixer layer by moving an audio source **Up** (left) or **Down** (right) in the list.

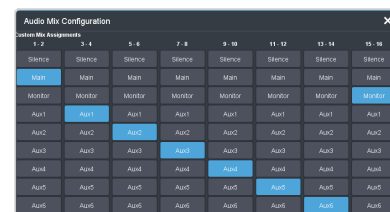
**Tip:** To change the name of a mix layer, click **Label** and enter the new name in the field.

## To Configure Audio Outputs

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Outputs**.



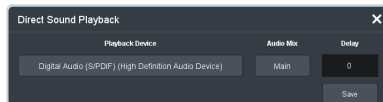
2. In the **Video + Audio** section, click the **Audio Mix** button for the video output you want to assign an audio source to and select the audio source.



- **Custom** — select which audio source will be embedded on each stereo pair.
- **Silence** — embed silence.

- **Main** — embed the main audio mix from the internal audio mixer.
- **Monitor** — embed the monitor mix from the internal audio mixer.
- **Aux X** — embed the audio from Aux Bus X.

3. In the **Audio Only** area, click **New Playback Device**.



4. Click the **Playback Device** button and select the audio playback device you want to use.
5. Click the **Audio Mix** button and select the audio source you want to assign.
6. In the **Delay** field, enter the amount of audio delay you want to ally to the output.

***Tip:** Delay can be used to compensate for the output framebuffer delay.*

7. Click **Save**.

***Tip:** You can delete a playback device by clicking the **Remove** button for the device.*

***Tip:** Click the **Audio Mix** button to select a different audio source for the playback device or enter a new value in the **Delay** field to edit an existing playback device.*

# Switcher Sets

The switcher stores configuration and operation data in a number of registers that contain the individual entries for items such as memories or personality settings. These registers can be stored as a single archive file, or as a register set that contains all the individual register of that type; all memories for example. Different Sets can be created for different shows or applications, allowing you to quickly locate and recall the switcher configurations.

**Note:** Set names cannot contain spaces. If the set name contains a space the set will not import properly.

The switcher stores information in the following registers:

- **Memory** — contains all the memories.
- **Custom Control** — contains all the custom control banks and macros.
- **Sequences** — contains of all the sequences created in the sequencer.
- **Installation** — contains all the external device setup, and software settings for the switcher as well as audio mixer configurations.
- **Personality** — contains all the user interface settings, such as transition rates, that are stored under the **Personality** menu.

**Tip:** Sets are stored differently if they are stored directly to the USB or exported. Sets stored directly to the USB are located in folders, but sets that are exported are archived in a TAR file. To interchange between the two you will need an archive program, such as 7-Zip, to extract the files from the TAR file or archive the files into a TAR file. Inside the TAR is the Set folder (named how you want the set named on the switcher) and component sub folders.

## To Store a Set

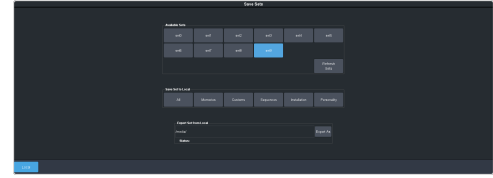
Switcher Sets are stored to the local hard drive. A link to the folder is located under the Carbonite Code entry on the **Start** menu.

**Note:** If you are updating an older setup file, you must perform a Recall All followed by a Store All. This updates the setup files the latest format. You can then make changes and store to individual registers if needed.

**Tip:** The switcher provides 10 empty sets by default. Additional sets can be created if you rename the sets from Windows®.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > Save Sets**.

**Tip:** Click **Refresh Sets** to update the list of available sets.



2. Click a **Select Set** button for the set you want to store the switcher registers to.
3. Click a **Save** button to save that register to the selected set. If the button is shown in brown, that register already exists in the set and will be overwritten.
  - **All** — store all registers to the set.
  - **Memories** — store only the memory registers to the set.
  - **Customs** — store only the custom control registers to the set.
  - **Sequences** — store only the Sequencer registers to the set.
  - **Installation** — store only the installation registers to the set.
  - **Personality** — store only the personality registers to the set.
4. Click **Yes**.

The registers are stored to the set on the hard drive.

**Tip:** You can export the switcher set to your local computer in the **Export Set From Frame** area. Click **Export As...** and navigate to the folder where you want to store the file and enter a name. Click **Save** and then **Export**.

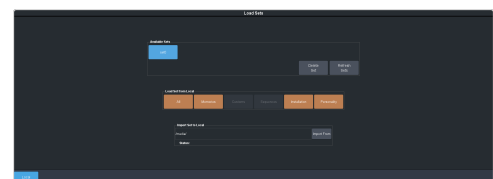
## To Load a Set

Switcher Sets can only be loaded from the hard drive.

**Note:** If you are updating an older setup file, you must perform a Recall All followed by a Store All. This updates the setup files the latest format. You can then make changes and store to individual registers if needed.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > Load Sets**.

**Tip:** Click **Refresh Sets** to update the list of available sets.



2. Click an **Available Set** button to select the set you want to load the switcher register

from. If there is only one set stored then these buttons will not be present.

3. Click a **Load** button to load that register. Only those registers that are present in the set are shown.
  - **All** — recall all registers from the set.
  - **Memories** — recall only the memory registers from the set.
  - **Customs** — recall only the custom control registers from the set.
  - **Sequences** — recall only the Sequencer registers from the set.
  - **Installation** — recall only the installation registers from the set.
  - **Personality** — recall only the personality registers from the set.
4. Click **Yes**.

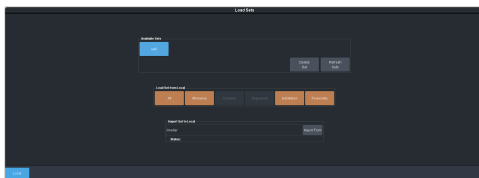
## Importing a Set

Import a switcher set from another switcher. When you import a set, the switcher attempts to apply all the configurations in that set. If the set contains features or resources that the switcher does not have, those settings are ignored.

### To Import a Set

Importing a set from your computer to the switcher.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > Load Sets**.



2. In the **Import Set to...** area, click **Import From** and navigate to the folder on your computer where the set is stored and click **Open**.

**Note:** Set names cannot contain spaces. If the set name contains a space the set will not import properly.

It may take several minutes for the set to upload to the switcher.

3. Click the **Available Sets** button for the set you just imported.

**Tip:** Click **Refresh Sets** if the imported set does not appear on the list.

With the new set imported onto the switcher, you can load it just as you would any other set.

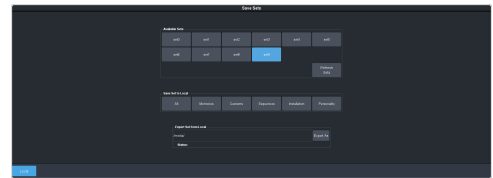
## Exporting a Sets

Export a switcher set to the DashBoard computer.

### To Export a Set

Exporting a set to your computer from the switcher.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > Save Sets**.



2. Click the **Available Sets** button for the set you want to export.
3. In the **Export Set from...** area, click **Export As** and navigate to the folder on your computer where you want to store the exported set and click **Save**.

It may take several minutes for the set to download from the switcher.



---

## Media-Store

The MediaManager interface to the Media-Store allows you to load stills, animations, or audio files and make them available across all MEs.

### Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when working with Media-Store:

- A still, animation, or audio can be loaded either by browsing the file system, or by entering the still number using the pattern buttons.
- You can clear a Media-Store channel by loading media number 000.
- If you delete a media item from the USB, you may have to load that media item into a Media-Store channel for the switcher to prompt you to delete the media item from the database.
- If you delete or rename a media item on the USB while it is still inserted into the switcher, you must attempt to load the old file to clear that entry from the database.

## Working With Media-Store Animations

Media-Store animations can be used for animated backgrounds, branding "bugs", or media transitions. You can set up an animation to loop, play automatically when taken on-air, play in reverse, or even play at different speeds.

**Tip:** You can play an animation manually from a control panel by selecting the source button for the Media-Store channel with the animation you want to play, and pressing **Run** on the 3-knob menu. The knob changes to **Stop** as the animation is playing.

### Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when working with Media-Store animations:

- When you load an animation to an off-air Media-Store channel, or the animation goes off-air with a transition, the preview shows the cut point (**CutFr**) for that animation, and not the first frame of the video.
- You can manually cycle through frames by turning the **Run** knob while the animation is stopped.
- Double-pressing the **Run** knob stops playback and re-cues the animation to the first frame.

- You can shuttle forwards and backwards through the animation by turning the positioner clockwise or anti-clockwise when the animation is stopped, if your control panel has a positioner with a z-axis. Shuttle speed is increased and decreased by turning the positioner more or less in each direction.
- You can run or stop an animation by pressing the positioner button, if your control panel has a positioner with a button.

## Working With Media-Store Audio

Audio can be added to the playout of a Media-Store channel either by loading the file directly, or by naming the audio file the same as the animation or still you want it to play out with. When you load the still or animation, the switcher will automatically load the audio file of the same name.

### Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when working with Media-Store audio:

- Media-Store audio is available to the audio mixer.
- Audio files must be 16-bit wav files at a 48kHz sample rate. Any 24-bit audio files are converted to 16-bit when loaded.
- Audio files must be in the same folder and have the same name as the still or animation they are to be associated with.
- An audio file does not need to be of the same length as the animation it is associated with.
- A still with audio or audio only have the Auto Play and Looping attributes. These apply to the audio playout.
- The looping time of an animation with audio is the length of the animation.
- A Media-Store channel can be loaded with Audio only.

## Media-Store File Specifications

Media items can be in TGA, PNG, or JPG file formats. For animations, the files must be numbered to indicate the order they go in, and the name and the number must be separated with an underscore. For audio, 16-bit WAV files of the same name as the still or animation are used to associate audio with a still or animation.

For example, the following files are treated as a single animation named Anim that is 100 frames long:

- Anim\_001.tga
- Anim\_002.tga
- Anim\_003.tga
- ...
- Anim\_100.tga

**Note:** Media items must be created in the same color gamut and dynamic range that they are intended to be used in on the switcher. If a media item is created in one color space and the switcher is operating in another, the media item may not appear correctly.

**Note:** An animation must start with `_001` at the end of the name of the first frame.



**Important:** Files names cannot contain symbols such as `! @ # & * ( ) / , ? ' "` and cannot start with an underscore (`_`).

## Loading Stills or Animations

Stills or animations can be loaded into Media-Store channels by navigating to the file in MediaManager. MediaManager creates and maintains a database of the media items in the file directory, as well as the setting for each media item and a thumbnail.

**Note:** The internal cache is used for sample images only and cannot be used to store user stills or animations.

### To Load a Media Item

Media items are loaded into a Media-Store channel from MediaManager

**Note:** Media items must be created in the same color gamut and dynamic range that they are intended to be used in on the switcher. If a media item is created in one color space and the switcher is operating in another, the media item may not appear correctly.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Media > MediaManager**

**Tip:** The MediaManager can also be accessed from Live Assist (Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > Media > MediaManager**). The Live Assist version follows Media-Store source selections on the panel.



2. Navigate to the folder containing the media item you want to load into a Media-Store channel.

**Note:** The first time you navigate to a folder it may take a few moments for the Media-Store to scan the files and build the database entries.

**Tip:** You can upload a media item from your computer to the selected folder on the storage device. In the **Still Upload** area click **Browse** and navigate to the media item you want to upload. Click **Open** and then **Upload File**.

All the media items in that folder are shown in the center area of the page.

3. Drag the media item onto the Media-Store channel you want to load it in.

**Tip:** The film-strip symbol (🎞️) indicates that the media item is an animation, the key symbol (🔑) indicates that the media item has an alpha, and the speaker symbol (🔊) indicates that the media item has audio associated with it, or is audio only.

**Tip:** You can remove items from the Media-Store cache to free up space. Refer to [Media-Store Cache Manager](#) for more information.

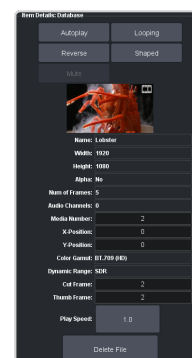
## Deleting a Media Item

Delete media items to remove them from the storage device and database.

### To Delete A Media Item

Delete a media item from the storage device. You can only delete a single item at a time and you cannot delete the internal sample items.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Media > MediaManager**
2. Navigate to the folder on the storage device that has the item you want to delete and select the media item that you want to delete.
3. In the **Item Details** area, scroll to the bottom.





- Click **Delete File** and **OK**.

## MediaManager Channel Control

Once a media item is loaded into a channel you can control the playout for the media item from MediaManager.

**Note:** Playlists are not supported by MediaManager in DashBoard at this time.



**Tip:** The background of the channel areas tallies the on-air status of the Media-Store channel. Red for on-air and green for on-preview.

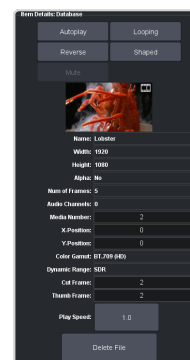
The label below the thumbnail of the media item shows the name of the file, the number of frames in the animation, and the media ID. In this example, the name of the media item is **Lobster**, it is **5** frames long, it is located on the USB (**U1**) and has a media ID of **001**.

The controls below the name allow you to set how the animation plays out as well as eject the current media item.

- **Play** — play the animation.
- **Loop** — set the animation to start playing again from the beginning when it reaches the last frame.
- **Play Direction** — set the animation to play in the forward or reverse direction.
- **Re-cue** — re-cue the animation to the first playout frame.
- **Eject** — eject the current media item from the channel.

## Media-Store Attributes

Attributes are applied to the media item in the database and in each Media-Store channel. Where the attributes are being applied is shown in the upper left corner of the area. If you adjust the attributes of the media item in one channel, these settings are not applied back to the database or to other channel if the same media item is loaded into more than one channel.



**Tip:** At the top of the **Item Details** frame the title indicates if the information shown applies to the media item loaded into the media channel (**MX**), or is from the media item in the database (**Database**).

### Buttons:

- **Autoplay** — play the animation automatically when the Media-Store channel is taken on-air.
- **Reverse** — set the animation to play in the forward or reverse direction.
- **Mute** — mute the audio associated with the media item.
- **Looping** — set the animation to start playing again from the beginning when it reaches the last frame.
- **Shaped** — set the alpha to be shaped, or unshaped when not selected.

### Fields:

- **Name** — the name of the media item as taken from the file name.
- **Width** — the width of the media item raster.
- **Height** — the height of the media item raster.
- **Alpha** — shows whether there is an associated alpha with the media item.
- **Number of Frames** — the number of frames in the animation.
- **Audio Channels** — the number of audio channels in the associated audio.
- **Media Number** — the media number of the media item.
- **X-Position** — set the horizontal position of the media item.
- **Y-Position** — set the vertical position of the media item.
- **Cut Frame** — set the frame of the animation when used as part of a MediaWipe.
- **Thumb Frame** — set the frame of the animation that is used for the thumbnail.
- **Play Speed** — set the playout speed for the animation.

# Custom Controls

Once programmed, a custom control (CC) can be played back by pressing a button. The custom control can be as simple as triggering an output GPI pulse, or as complex as recalling a specific memory register on an ME, performing a switcher transition, and selecting a group of keys.

You can record, edit, and run custom controls from the Custom Control node in DashBoard.

Refer to [Custom Control Events](#) on page 96 for information on available events.

**Tip:** For information on using the **State Attributes** tab, refer to [Custom Control Events](#) on page 97.

## Recording/Editing Custom Controls

When you create a custom control, you record a series of events and special functions, that are played back when you run the custom control. The process for creating a new cc and editing an existing one are the same, except when editing you have the option to insert events at different points in the existing cc.

Almost any action or setting can be stored in a custom control, with the following exceptions:

- Diagnostic Functions
- Confirmation Dialogs
- Panel-Specific Functions

**Note:** It is recommended that you use a control panel for recording custom controls.

### Keep the following in mind:

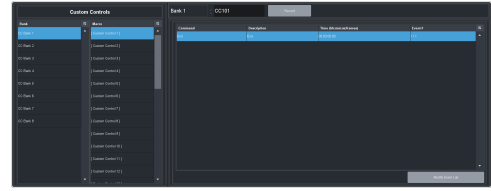
Keep the following in mind when recording custom controls:

- Some functions take time to perform and a pause should be added after the function to ensure that the command is completed before moving on to the next command.
- If you are recording a custom control from DashBoard, only new settings are recorded. If the current setting in DashBoard is the value you want to record, you need to select a different value and then select the value you want to use.

### To Record a Custom Control

A basic custom control records a series of events that are played out in the same order they are recorded.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Custom Control > Editor**.



2. Click a **Bank** button to select the bank that the custom control you want to record will be stored on.
3. Click a **Macro** button to select the custom control that you want to record to. If the custom control already has a macro recorded, the name of the custom control is shown in the list.

**Tip:** You can rename both the custom control and the bank by entering a new name in the field next to the record button.

4. Click **Record**.

**Tip:** The switcher can be set so that each command is automatically separated from the previous command by a pause equal to the real-time delay between you entering commands. Refer to [To Set the CC Pause Mode](#) on page 59 for more information.

The **CC/UP** button on the control panel, as well as the button assigned to the CC on the bus, flash red when the CC is recording.

5. Insert the events you want to record. Events can be entered from the menu or from actions directly on the control panel.

Each custom control can have a maximum of 998 events, plus the End event.

**Note:** When the switcher runs a custom control, it attempts to execute each event in the custom control as quickly as possible. If an event takes time to complete, the event may not be complete before the switcher attempts to execute the next event. For example, if your custom control has a memory recall followed by a transition, a pause should be added between the memory recall and the transition to ensure that the memory is fully recalled before the transition is performed. The same applies if you want to add events after a transition.

6. Click **Stop Recording** to finish recording.

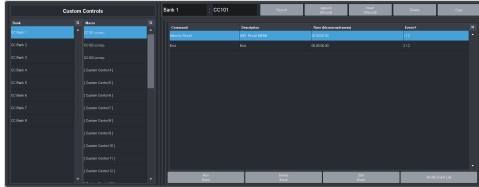
**Tip:** Click **Cancel** if you do not want to store your events to the custom control.

### To Edit a Custom Control

When editing a custom control, you can delete and insert events at any point in the custom control, or append events to the end.

**Tip:** When editing a custom control, press **Run Event** to run the currently selected event. This can help you diagnose problems in a custom control.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Custom Control > Editor**.



2. Click **BankX** to select the bank that the custom control you want to edit is on.
3. Click the custom control that you want to edit.
4. Click the event that you want to edit or insert an event before.

**Note:** The name of a custom control is highlighted in red if it contains events that are no longer supported. The unsupported events in the custom control are also highlighted in red.

Refer to [Custom Control Events](#) on page 96 for information on available events.

5. Edit the custom control or event.
  - **Append (Record)** — start inserting events to the end of the custom control
  - **Append** — insert the current event at the end of the custom control
  - **Copy** — copy the entire custom control
  - **Delete** — delete the entire custom control
  - **Delete Event** — delete the currently selected event
  - **Edit Event** — edit the parameters of the currently selected event
  - **Insert (Record)** — start insert events after the currently selected event
  - **Insert** — insert the current event after the currently selected event
  - **Record** — start recording a new custom control over the existing one
  - **Run Event** — run the currently selected event

## Custom Control Pause Mode

The switcher can be set so that each command is automatically separated from the previous command by a pause equal to the real-time delay between events as you enter them.

When you are entering events into the custom control, the length of time between you entering the events is recorded as a pause between the events. This allows you to perform a set of actions as you normally would and have the custom control play those events back with the same pauses and 'rhythm' that you would normally have.

### To Set the CC Pause Mode

The CC Pause Mode must be set before recording a custom control and does now change how a custom control plays out.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > Custom Controls**.



2. Click a **Pause Mode** button to select how the switcher inserts pauses into a custom control.
  - **Manual Pause** — no pauses are added. You must manually add pauses to the custom control.
  - **Record Pause** — pauses are entered automatically as you enter events. For example, if you pause for 30 seconds between selecting a key and performing a transition, a 30 second pause is inserted between those events in the custom control.

## Running a Custom Control

Once a custom control has been programmed, you can run that custom control by pressing the button that the custom control was recorded to.

### Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when running custom controls:

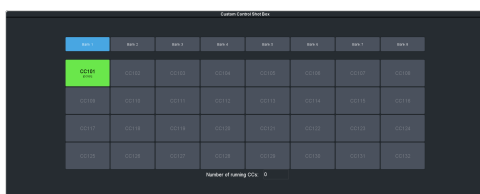
- A custom control will continue to run until it reaches a hold event, is stopped by another custom control, you edit a custom control, or the custom control reaches the end.
- When a custom control is running, the button on the custom control bus is red.

- When a custom control is held (at a Hold event), the button on the custom control bus flashes white.
- You can run multiple custom controls at the same time. The number of running custom controls is shown on the display when in custom control mode.
- You can stop a running custom control by pressing the red custom control button on the custom control bank.
- You can stop all running custom controls by selecting a custom control with no events recorded to it.
- A maximum of 128 custom controls can be run at the same time.
- The name of a custom control is highlighted in red if it contains events that are no longer supported. The unsupported events in the custom control are also highlighted in red.

## To Run a Custom Control

Once a custom control has been recorded, you can run that custom control at any time.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Custom Control > Shot Box**.



**Tip:** You can also run a custom control directly from the control panel.

**Tip:** The number of custom controls that are currently running is shown at the bottom of the page.

2. Click **Bank X** to select the bank that the custom control you want to run is on.
3. Click a custom control button to run that specific custom control. The custom control starts to play immediately.

## Naming Custom Controls

Each custom control can be given a unique name and mnemonic color. The name and color is shown on the custom control button.

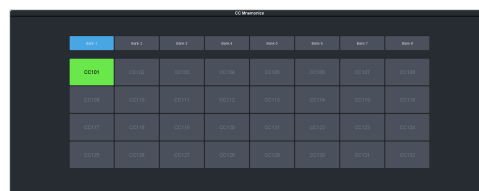
### To Name a Custom Control

The procedure to name or rename a custom control is the same.

**Tip:** You can also name a custom control and bank from the **Editor** page.

**Tip:** Refer to [General Settings](#) on page 81 for information setting how the custom control names are shown on the control panel mnemonics.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Custom Control > CC Mnemonics**.



2. Click **Bank X** to select the bank that the custom control you want to name is on.
3. Select how you want the mnemonics on each panel row to display the mnemonics for custom controls.
  - **Off** — the mnemonics don't change when the row is assigned to a custom control bank.
  - **Split** — the mnemonics are split (top to cc name and bottom to bus sources) when the row is assigned to a custom control bank.
  - **Full** — the mnemonics are show only the names of the custom controls when the row is assigned to a custom control bank.
4. Click the custom control that you want to name.



Setting	Description
<b>Name</b>	Enter a new name for the selected custom control.
<b>Foreground</b>	Click a <b>Foreground</b> button to select the color you want to apply to the text on the mnemonic.
<b>Background</b>	Click a <b>Background</b> button to select the color you want to apply to the background on the mnemonic.

## Deleting Custom Controls

Any custom control on the switcher can be deleted to remove unused customs to free up space for new custom controls.

---

## To Delete a Custom Control

Deleting a custom control from the switcher.

There is no undo for this delete function.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Custom Control > Editor**.
2. Click **Bank X** to select the bank that the custom control you want to delete is on.
3. Click the custom control button that you want to delete.
4. Click **Delete**.
5. Click **Delete** to delete the custom control.

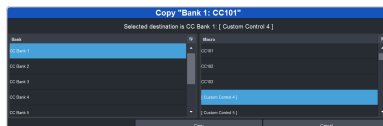
## Copying and Pasting Custom Controls

The contents, or events, of a custom control can be copied from one custom control and pasted to another. Along with the events, the name and mnemonic settings are also copied.

### To Copy and Paste a Custom Control

Copy the contents of a custom control from one button to another.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Custom Control > Editor**.
2. Click **Bank X** to select the bank that the custom control you want to copy is on.
3. Click the custom control that you want to copy.
4. Click **Copy**.
5. Select the custom control that you want to paste into.



6. Click **Copy**.

# Sequencer

The Sequencer allows you to create a playlist of custom control events.

The switcher supports 5 Sequencers, each with an independent rundown of events. The Sequencer uses sequences to store the rundown of events. These sequence files can be loaded into one or multiple Sequencers.

**Tip:** You can link multiple Sequencers together so that as you advance through one, the other Sequencers will advance.

## Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when working with a Sequencer:

- Unlike a Custom Control, a Sequence only runs a single event at a time. You must advance to the next event in the sequence to run that event.
- If you run a Play CC event in a sequence, the Sequencer does not indicate when the CC event has completed.
- Only a subset of CC events can be run directly in the a sequence. You can use the Play CC event to run a custom control that contains any other events.
- If you edit a sequence that is already loaded into a Sequencer, you must **Reload** the sequence to update the event in the Sequencer.
- There is only one linked group. When **Linked** is toggled on for a Sequencer it is tied to all other Sequencers with **Linked** turned on.
- Linking only affects the operation of the **Next** button.
- Memories cannot be used to load a sequence into a Sequencer.

## Creating/Editing Sequences

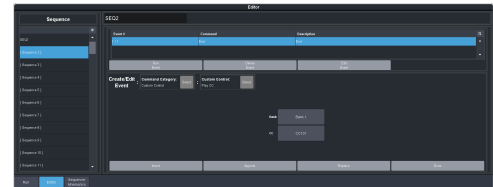
When you create a sequence, you record a series of events and special functions that are played back as you step through the sequence. The process for creating a new sequence and editing an existing one are the same, except when editing you have the option to insert events at different points in the existing sequence.

**Tip:** Remember that sequences run one event at a time. Use the Memory Recall or Transition Action events to perform complex actions.

## To Create/Edit a Sequence

Editing a sequence is similar to creating or editing a custom control. A series of events are added to a list in the order you want the events to be run.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > Sequencer > Editor**.



2. Click a **Sequence** list item to select the sequence that you want to create or edit. If the sequence already has events, the name of the sequence is shown in the list and events are shown on the right.

**Tip:** You can rename the sequence by entering a new name in the field at the top.

3. Click **Modify Event List**.
4. Click the **Create/Edit Event** buttons to navigate to and select the event you want to add to the sequence. Refer to [Custom Control Events](#) on page 96 for information on the events.

**Tip:** The Sequencer only supports a subset of the possible CC events. If you want to run a custom control event that is not listed for the sequencer, you can create a CC with that event in it and then use the Play CC event in the sequence to run that custom control.

**Tip:** If you want to edit an existing event, select the event you want to edit and click **Edit Event**.

5. Add or edit an event in the sequence.
  - **Append** — insert the new event at the end of the sequence.
  - **Delete Event** — delete the currently selected event.
  - **Insert** — insert the new event before the currently selected event.
  - **Replace** — replace the currently selected even with the new event.
  - **Run Event** — run only the currently selected event.
6. Click **Done** when you are finished editing the sequence.



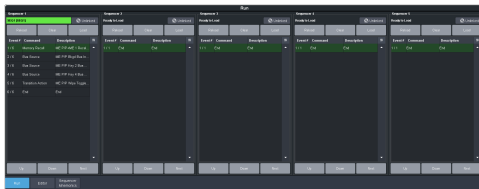
## Loading and Running a Sequence

Once a sequence has been created, you can load that sequence into a Sequencer and run each event.

### To Load a Sequence

A sequence must be loaded into the Sequencer before it can be run.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > Sequencer > Run.**



2. Click **Load** on the Sequencer you want to load a sequence into.



3. Click the **SEQ** button for the sequence you want to load.

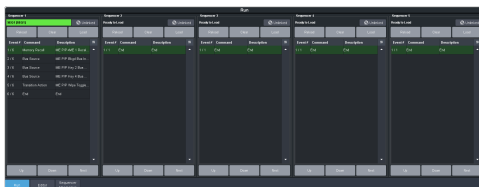
**Tip:** Click **Clear** to unload the sequence from the Sequencer.

**Tip:** Click **Reload** to load the sequence into the Sequencer again. This can be useful if you have edited the sequence.

### To Run a Sequence

A sequence is run one event at a time. Events can be skipped over by selecting a different event in the sequence as the next event.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > Sequencer > Run.**



2. Use the **Up**, **Down**, and **Next** buttons to run through the sequence.



#	Function
1	The currently loaded sequence. This uses the mnemonic name and color.
2	Multiple Sequencers can be linked together. This only affects the <b>Next</b> button and allows clicking <b>Next</b> on any of the linked Sequencers to advance all the linked Sequencers. There is only one linked group.
3	The <b>Reload</b> , <b>Clear</b> , and <b>Load</b> buttons allow you to populate or clear the Sequencer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Load</b> — load a different sequence into the Sequencer.</li> <li>• <b>Clear</b> — unload the current sequence from the Sequencer.</li> <li>• <b>Reload</b> — reload or update the current sequence in the Sequencer.</li> </ul>
4	The red highlight shows the last run (current) sequence event.
5	The green highlight shows the next event to be run. Click on a different event, or use the <b>Up</b> or <b>Down</b> buttons to select a different event to be run next.
6	The <b>Up</b> and <b>Down</b> buttons move the green (run next) highlight up and down in the sequence.
7	The <b>Next</b> button runs the event that is currently highlighted in green.

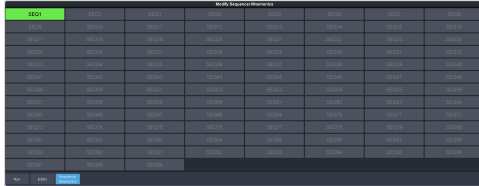
## Sequence Names and Mnemonics

Each sequence can be given a unique name and mnemonic color. The name and color are shown on the Sequencer.

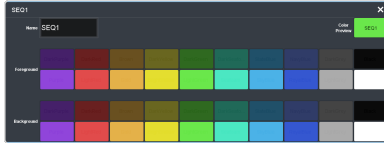
### To Name a Sequence

**Tip:** You can also name a sequence from the **Editor** page.

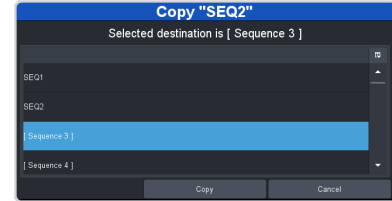
1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > Sequencer > Sequencer Mnemonics.**



2. Click the sequence that you want to name.



Setting	Description
<b>Name</b>	Enter a new name for the selected sequence.
<b>Foreground</b>	Click a <b>Foreground</b> button to select the color you want to apply to the text on the mnemonic.
<b>Background</b>	Click a <b>Background</b> button to select the color you want to apply to the background on the mnemonic.



5. Click **Copy**.

## Deleting a Sequence

Any sequence can be deleted to remove unused sequences to free up space for new sequences.

### To Delete a Sequence

There is no undo for this delete function.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > Sequencer > Editor**.
2. Click the sequence that you want to delete.
3. Click **Delete**.
4. Click **Delete** to delete the sequence.

## Copying and Pasting a Sequence

The contents, or events, of a sequence can be copied from one sequence and pasted to another. Along with the events, the name and mnemonic settings are also copied.

### To Copy and Paste a Sequence

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Live Assist > Sequencer > Editor**.
2. Click the sequence that you want to copy.
3. Click **Copy**.
4. Select the sequence that you want to paste into.



# Network Setup

The switcher runs as a service on the PC.

The switcher uses the following network ports:

- DashBoard Main — 5253 (5258 NAT)
- DashBoard Sat 1 — 5255 (5259 NAT)
- DashBoard Sat 2 — 5256 (5260 NAT)
- DashBoard SoftPanel — 5257 (5261 NAT)
- FTP (Graphite CPC) — 8821
- SFTP — 2222
- RossTalk — 7788
- RossTalk for XPression on Graphite CPC — 7790
- SSH — 22
- TFTP — 69
- TSL 3.1 (TCP, Carbonite) — 5727
- TSL 3.1 (TCP, Ultrix™) — 5727
- TSL 3.1 (UDP, Ultrix™) — 4490
- TSL 5.0 (TCP, Carbonite) — 5728
- TSL 5.0 (TCP, Ultrix™) — 5729
- TSL 5.0 (UDP, Ultrix™) — 4492
- Web Server 1 — 80

## DashBoard Network Settings

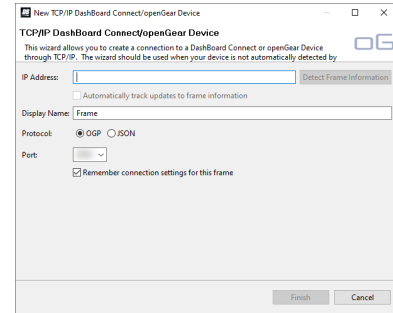
DashBoard can be connected to Carbonite Code manually. Once connected, DashBoard will remember the connection until you remove it or the IP address changes.

### To Connect DashBoard to the Switcher

DashBoard connects to the switcher as the main panel, or as a satellite panel or SoftPanel. Connecting as a main or satellite panel is selected by the port used to connect to on the switcher. All DashBoard connections and physical panels that connect on the same port mirror each other.

You need the IP address of the Carbonite Code computer to connect to it from DashBoard.

1. Launch the DashBoard application.
2. Click **File > New > TCP/IP DashBoard Connect or openGear Device**.



3. In the **IP Address** field, enter the IP address of the Carbonite Code computer.

**Tip:** If you are running DashBoard on the Carbonite Code computer, use `localhost` as the IP address and click **Detect Frame Information**. DashBoard will enter the internal IP address of the switcher.

4. In the **Display Name** field, enter the name you want to use to identify the frame in DashBoard. This should be a unique name for the frame you are setting up.
5. Select **OGP**.
6. In the **Port** field, enter the port you want to connect to on the frame. The port you connect to assigns the relationship the DashBoard connection has to the frame.

**Note:** You can use a NAT gateway to connect to the switcher from a DashBoard computer on a different network. If you are connecting to the switcher through a NAT gateway, you must use the NAT ports instead of the regular ports.

**Tip:** Multiple DashBoard connections can use the same port, but they will mirror each other. For example, you can connect a control panel and a separate DashBoard computer to the Main Panel port to give control from the panel and DashBoard.

- **Main Panel** — 5253 (5258 NAT)
- **Satellite 1** — 5255 (5259 NAT)
- **Satellite 2** — 5256 (5260 NAT)
- **Satellite 3/SoftPanel** — 5257 (5261 NAT)

7. Click **Finish**.  
The switcher appears in the **Tree View**.

## FTP/SFTP Connection

You can create a File Transfer Protocol (FTP), or Secure FTP (SFTP) connection from a computer to your switcher. You can use the connection to copy still images and animations to and from your switcher.

The procedure for creating an FTP/SFTP connection from a computer varies between operating systems and client software. Consult

---

with the documentation that came with your computer for assistance with creating an FTP/SFTP connection.

**Note:** The FTP connection to the frame can be disabled. Refer to [System Access](#) on page 67 for more information.

## To Create an FTP/SFTP Connection

This procedure applies to Microsoft® Windows® 7 and above.

**Note:** FTP must be **Enabled** (Click **Navigation Menu** > **Configuration** > **System** > **Global**) to connect to the frame over FTP. If FTP is disabled SFTP will be used. Refer to [System Access](#) on page 67 for more information.

1. On your computer launch Windows Explorer.
2. In the address bar, type the following depending on the type of connection you are using.
  - FTP — `sftp://IP Address of your switcher:8821`
  - SFTP — `ftp://IP Address of your switcher:2222`

You are prompted for a username and password.

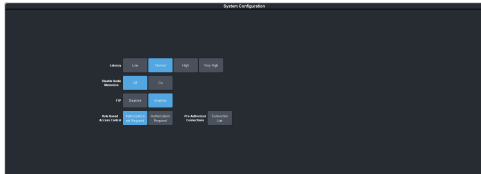
3. Type the user name for the application your are creating an FTP/SFTP connection for. Each application has specific requirements. The switcher will set these requirements automatically based on the username.
  - `xpression` – used when creating a connection from a Ross® XPression Motion Graphics System directly to the Media-Store channels on the switcher, as well as any USB drive installed in the switcher.
4. Enter the password `password`

# System Access

Enable or disable system access and control methods such as FTP.

## To Enable/Disable a System Access Method

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > Global**.



2. Configure the access method as required.

Method	Description
<b>FTP</b>	Disable FTP connections to the frame ( <b>SFTP Only</b> ). This prevents all FTP connections. If FTP is disabled SFTP is used. Refer to <a href="#">FTP/SFTP Connection</a> on page 65 for information on used FTP to connect to the frame.
<b>Role Based Access Control</b>	Ross Platform Manager allows for user authentication and role based access through DashBoard. Refer to <a href="#">To Turn on Role Based Access Control for Ross Platform Manager</a> on page 20 for more information.

3. The switcher must be re-started for the change to be applied.

## Video Mode and Latency

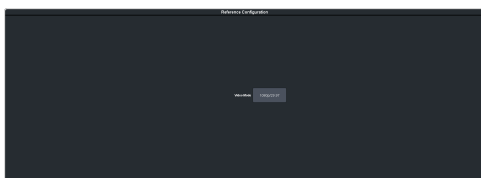
The switcher can operate in any of the supported video formats (modes). Latency can be used to adjust system performance.

### To Set a Video Mode

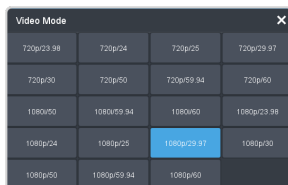
The video mode is the video format that the switcher is operating in.

**Note:** All video source should be in the same video format that the switcher is operating in.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Reference**.



2. Click the **Video Mode** button and select the video format you want to use.



### To Set the System Latency

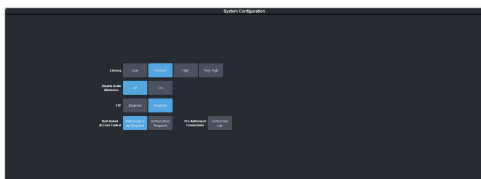
Set the sync frame and buffering that the switcher does to improve responsiveness or reduce dropped frames.



**Important:** Latency affects the responsiveness of the switcher, including button presses.

**Note:** It is recommended to leave this setting on **Normal** unless advised otherwise by technical support.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > Global**.



2. Click a **Latency** button to select the latency you want to use.



**Important:** Changing latency happens in real time and may cause video errors when changed.

- **Low** — use when all your sources are in the same format as the switcher (short latency with small queue).
- **Normal** — use when most or all of your sources are in same format as the switcher (default).
- **High** — use when you are seeing some dropped frames in the video output (long latency with large queue).
- **Very High** — use when you are seeing several dropped frames in the video output (very long latency with large queue).

# Video Inputs

External video sources come into the switcher directly through an NDI® stream, and internal sources are generated internally from the switcher.

Depending on how you want to use these video sources, or where they come from, you may want the switcher to pair them together, or associate an external device with them. Pairing two video sources together is usually used for an auto select key where an external device, such as a character generator, outputs both a key video and key alpha. Associating a video source with an external device allows special control over that device to become active when you select the source on a bus.

## Video Input Setup

Video inputs are separated into sources and internal. The sources are the video inputs coming from NDI® streams, and internal sources are generated internally from re-entries or follows, or from media generators.

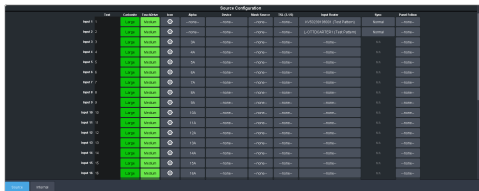
The NDI® converter and the DashBoard computer for the switcher should be on the same subnet.

**Note:** The NDI® Access Manager from the NDI® Tools ([ndi.video](#)) may be required to be installed on the DashBoard computer for the NDI® stream to appear as an input on the switcher.

### To Set up an External Video Input

External sources come into the switcher from other devices, such as cameras, video servers, or character generators.

Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Inputs > Source**



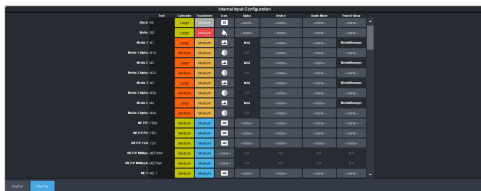
The inputs are listed along the side and the various settings are listed across the top. Click the setting button for the source you want to set up to view the available settings.

Setting	Description
<b>Text</b>	Apply a custom name to the source. Enter a new name for each input you want to identify differently. The name is used to identify the input on the panel mnemonics as well as on menus. If TSL id is associated with the input, the switcher will use the router mnemonic name over the internal one.  <i>Tip: A line break can be added to the name by entering a vertical bar, or pipe, symbol (   ) where you want the break. For example, entering CAM   1 would be CAM and then 1 on a separate line. Note that the   symbol does take up a character slot in the name.</i>
<b>Carbonite</b>	Set up the mnemonic appearance of the source for the control panel you are using. Refer to your control panel documentation for more information on setting up mnemonics.
<b>TouchDrive</b>	
<b>Icon</b>	
<b>Alpha</b>	Link an alpha video feed to the video. If the input is the video or fill for an auto key, click the <b>Alpha</b> button and select the video source you want to use as the alpha. Refer to <a href="#">To Set Up an Auto Key Association</a> on page 71 for information on setting up an auto key.
<b>Device</b>	Link an external device to a video input to allow remote control for that device.
<b>TSL (3.1/5)</b>	Assign a TSL id to the input and set the tally state. Refer to <a href="#">To Assign a TSL ID to a Video Input</a> on page 70 for information on assigning a TSL id to an input.
<b>Input Router</b>	Assign a video source to a switcher input. Refer to <a href="#">Input Router</a> on page 72 for more information.
<b>Sync</b>	Select the source you want to use to synchronize the audio and video of the NDI® input. Refer to <a href="#">NDI Sync</a> on page 72 for more information.
<b>Panel Follow</b>	Select one of the custom panels to be shown on Live Assist when the source is selected. This can be used to have the DashBoard page for a camera control unit displayed when the camera source is selected. Refer to <a href="#">Custom Page Auto Follow</a> on page 73 for information on setting up custom panels.

### To Set up an Internal Video Input

Internal sources are generated inside the switcher, such as matte backgrounds, Media-Store channels, and ME re-entries.

Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Inputs > Internal**



The internal sources are listed along the side and the various settings are listed across the top. Click the setting button for the source you want to set up to view the available settings.

Setting	Description
<b>Text</b>	Apply a custom name to the source. Enter a new name for each input you want to identify differently. The name is used to identify the input on the panel mnemonics and well as on menus.
<b>Carbonite</b>	Set up the mnemonic appearance of the source for the control panel you are using. Refer to your control panel documentation for more information on setting up mnemonics.
<b>TouchDrive</b>	
<b>Icon</b>	
<b>Alpha</b>	Link an alpha video signal to the video. The Media-Store channels have dedicated alpha channels that cannot be changed. Refer to <a href="#">To Set Up an Auto Key Association</a> on page 71 for information on setting up an auto key.
<b>Device</b>	Link an external device to a video input to allow remote control for that device.
<b>Panel Follow</b>	Select one of the custom panels to be shown on Live Assist when the source is selected. The pages for MediaManager are assigned to the Media-Store sources. Refer to <a href="#">Custom Page Auto Follow</a> on page 73 for information on setting up custom panels.

## Source Names

Each video source in the switcher can be given a unique name. These names can be customized for how they appear on the mnemonics by adjusting the size or the font and the background color.

**Note:** If a TSL ID is assigned to a source, the switcher overwrites the source name on the MultiViewer and mnemonics with the TSL name. In DashBoard, the physical input is also shown below the TSL name. If there is no TSL name, or it has not been received yet, the source name is blank. For the labels on the MultiViewer, a combination of the TSL name and switcher source name can be used. The new TSL name is passed from the switcher to any downstream TSL devices.

### To Set Up a Source Name

Source names appear on mnemonics, menus, and on the MultiViewer.

**Note:** Source names are restricted to eight characters in length.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Inputs > Source** if you are setting up a physical input, or **Internal** if you are setting up an internal input.
2. Enter a new name in the **Text** field for the video input that you want to name.

### To Assign a TSL ID to a Video Input

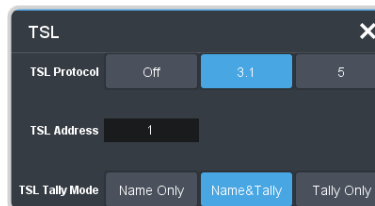
Pass router mnemonic names to the switcher with TSL ID data.

The switcher accepts incoming TSL data on TCP port 5727.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Inputs > Source**



2. Click the **TSL** button for the input you want to assign a TSL ID to.



3. Click a **TSL Protocol** button to select the TSL protocol version the input is listening for.
  - **Off** — TSL is off for this input.
  - **3.1** — the selected input is listening for TSL 3.1 messages.
  - **5** — the selected input is listening for TSL 5 messages.
4. In the **TSL Address** field, enter the TSL ID that applies to the selected input.
5. Click the **TSL Tally** button and select how the sources are tallied and which mnemonic name is use.
  - **Name Only** — TSL tally information for the selected ID is ignored. TSL mnemonic source names are used.
  - **Name&Tally** — source tallied on the MultiViewer based on the TSL input. TSL mnemonic source names are used.

- **Tally Only** — source tallied on the MultiViewer based on the TSL input. TSL mnemonic source names are not used.

**Note:** If a TSL ID is assigned to a source, the switcher overwrites the source name on the MultiViewer and mnemonics with the TSL name. In DashBoard, the physical input is also shown below the TSL name. If there is no TSL name, or it has not been received yet, the source name is blank. For the labels on the MultiViewer, a combination of the TSL name and switcher source name can be used. The new TSL name is passed from the switcher to any downstream TSL devices.

## Mnemonics

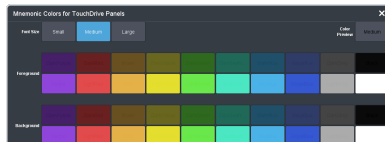
The mnemonic displays on the control panel show the name of the video source and can be customized for font size, color, and in some cases icons can be added. The customization that is available depends on the control panel you are using.

**Note:** The SoftPanel uses the Carbonite settings.

### To Customize Mnemonics for TouchDrive

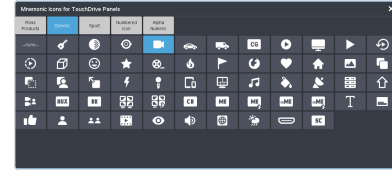
The TouchDrive control panels support RGB color mnemonics and icons.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Inputs > Source** if you are setting up a physical input, or **Internal** if you are setting up an internal input.
2. Click the **TouchDrive** button for the source you want to customize the mnemonics for.



Setting	Description
<b>Font Size</b>	Click <b>Small</b> , <b>Medium</b> , or <b>Large</b> to select the size of the font used on the mnemonic display. The larger the font, the fewer characters that are visible on the mnemonic.
<b>Foreground</b>	Click a <b>Foreground</b> button to select the color you want to apply to the text and icon on the mnemonic.
<b>Background</b>	Click a <b>Background</b> button to select the color you want to apply to the background on the mnemonic.

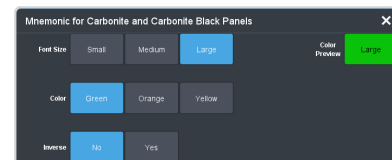
3. Click the **Icon** button for the source you want to customize the mnemonics for and click the icon you want to use.



### To Customize Mnemonics for Carbonite Black

The Carbonite control panels support three-color mnemonics without icons.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Inputs > Source** if you are setting up a physical input, or **Internal** if you are setting up an internal input.
2. Click the **Carbonite** button for the source you want to customize the mnemonics for.



Setting	Description
<b>Font Size</b>	Click <b>Small</b> , <b>Medium</b> , or <b>Large</b> to select the size of the font used on the mnemonic display. The larger the font, the fewer characters that are visible on the mnemonic.
<b>Color</b>	Click a <b>Color</b> button to select the color you want to apply to the mnemonic. The color is applied either to the background or the font, depending on the <b>Inverse</b> setting.
<b>Inverse</b>	Click an <b>Inverse</b> button to have the color applied to the background ( <b>No</b> ) or the text ( <b>Yes</b> ).

## Auto Key Setup

An auto key allows you to associate a key alpha with a key video source in the switcher. When the video source is selected as a keyer, the key alpha is automatically used.

### To Set Up an Auto Key Association

As well as input sources, internally generated sources, such as media-stores and color backgrounds, can be set up as an auto key.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Inputs > Source** if you are setting up a physical input, or **Internal** if you are setting up an internal input.



- | Alpha | 1  | 2   | 3  | 4   | 5  | 6   | 7  | 8   | 9   | 10  |
|-------|----|-----|----|-----|----|-----|----|-----|-----|-----|
| 10A   | 11 | 11A | 12 | 12A | 13 | 13A | 14 | 14A | 15  | 15A |
| 15A   | 16 | 16A | 17 | 17A | 18 | 18A | 19 | 19A | 20  |     |
| 20A   | 21 | 21A | 22 | 22A | 23 | 23A | 24 | 24A | 25  |     |
| 25A   | 26 | 26A | 27 | 27A | 28 | 28A | 29 | 29A | 30  |     |
| 30A   | 31 | 31A | 32 | 32A | 33 | 33A | 34 | 34A | 35  |     |
| 35A   | 36 | 36A | 37 | 37A | 38 | 38A | 39 | 39A | 40  |     |
| 40A   | 41 | 41A | 42 | 42A | 43 | 43A | 44 | 44A | 45  |     |
| 45A   | 46 | 46A | 47 | 47A | 48 | 48A | 49 | 49A | 50  |     |
| 50A   | 51 | 51A | 52 | 52A | 53 | 53A | 54 | 54A | 55  |     |
| 55A   | 56 | 56A | 57 | 57A | 58 | 58A | 59 | 59A | 60  |     |
| 60A   | 61 | 61A | 62 | 62A | 63 | 63A | 64 | 64A | 65  |     |
| 65A   | 66 | 66A | 67 | 67A | 68 | 68A | 69 | 69A | 70  |     |
| 70A   | 71 | 71A | 72 | 72A | 73 | 73A | 74 | 74A | 75  |     |
| 75A   | 76 | 76A | 77 | 77A | 78 | 78A | 79 | 79A | 80  |     |
| 80A   | 81 | 81A | 82 | 82A | 83 | 83A | 84 | 84A | 85  |     |
| 85A   | 86 | 86A | 87 | 87A | 88 | 88A | 89 | 89A | 90  |     |
| 90A   | 91 | 91A | 92 | 92A | 93 | 93A | 94 | 94A | 95  |     |
| 95A   | 96 | 96A | 97 | 97A | 98 | 98A | 99 | 99A | 100 |     |

- Note:** Each input (1) has an associated alpha (1A). The alpha signal for a source is taken from the alpha information that is embedded in the video stream.

4. Click an **Alpha Mode** button to select the alpha mode for the key alpha.
- **Linear** — switcher performs a multiplicative key. The key alpha cuts a hole based on the gradient values of the alpha. Shades of gray are translated into transparency levels, giving the key a soft edge. Unshaped key alphas can also be considered true linear alphas.
  - **Shaped** — switcher perform an additive key. With shaped keys, the key alpha cuts a hole based on the monochrome value

of the alpha. Shades of gray are translated into either white or black, giving the key a hard edge. Shaped Key alphas are sometimes used with Character Generators to cut very precise holes for the fill.

The input router allows you to assign NDI® streams to switcher inputs.

Assign video sources to switcher inputs.

- [illegible]

- Input Router**

Local

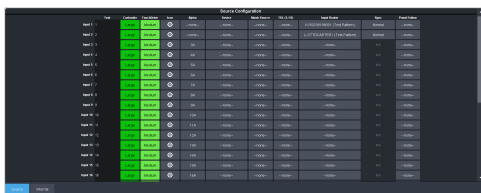
H0002010001 (Circuit 1)	H0002010001 (Circuit 2)	H0002010001 (Circuit 3)
H0002010001 (Circuit 4)	H0002010001 (Circuit 5)	H0002010001 (Circuit 6)
M0000000000 (Power Source In 1)	<b>H0002010001 (Dual Power)</b>	L0000000000 (Dual Power)
P0000000000 AND J0000000000		

- Each NDI® source must be synchronised to ensure proper audio and video timing. This synchronization can be either to the normal timecode in the NDI® stream, or the timestamp of the sending or receiving system.

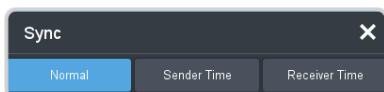
Select the synchronization source you want to use for NDI® video sources.

- 72 • Video Inputs — Carbonite Code User Manual (v1.2)





2. Click the **Sync** button for the NDI® input you want to set the sync source for.



- **Normal** (recommended) — use the standard timecode in NDI®.
- **Sender Time** — use the timestamp in the NDI® stream. This is when the sending equipment submitted the data to the NDI® library.
- **Receiver Time** — use the timestamp of when the system receives the NDI® data. This ignores the timestamp and timecode in the NDI® stream. This setting can be used when the NDI® timestamp and video/audio content don't match.

## Custom Page Auto Follow

DashBoard pages can be assigned to custom page buttons in Live Assist.

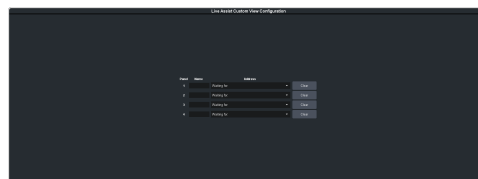
These custom pages can then be assigned to video inputs allowing Live Assist to auto follow to these pages when that video input is selected. For example, you can assign a custom page to the DashBoard page that controls a robotic camera. You can then set that custom page to follow the input from that camera. Whenever you select that camera as a source, Live Assist will jump to the custom page for that camera.

**Note:** PaneLink must be active in Live Assist for auto follow to function.

### To Assign a Page to a Custom Page Button

The custom page buttons on the Live Assist page can be assigned any custom page or node in DashBoard. This allows you to quickly access controls from another device on DashBoard from Live Assist on your current device.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > Live Assist**.



2. Click on the **Address** drop-down list for the custom page button you want to assign to a page.
3. Select the connection or custom panel that you want to assign to the custom page button.
  - **All Connections** — expand the list and select the device and node that you want to assign to the custom page button. Some older DashBoard nodes from plug-ins may not display properly on the Live Assist buttons.

**Note:** Do not assign the Live Assist page to a custom page on the same machine.

- **Open Panels** — expand the list and select the open custom panel you want to assign to the list. You must have the custom panel running on DashBoard for it to appear in the list.

**Tip:** Click **Clear** to remove the custom page and name assigned to that button.

4. Click on the name field for the custom page button you are assigning a page to and enter a descriptive name for the custom page. The name appears on the button in Live Assist.

### To Assign a Custom Page to Follow an Input

Assign a Live Assist custom page to follow a physical or internal video source.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Inputs > Source** if you are setting up a physical input, or **Internal** if you are setting up an internal input.
2. Click the **Panel Follow** button for the input you want to assign a custom page to.



3. Click the custom page you want to assign to the input or click **none**.

---

## Substitution Table

A substitution table allows you to specify a different source that will be taken on a bus when a specific source is selected on that bus. The substitution table requires an ME follow to be set up between the buses to trigger the substitution.

The substitution table can be used with the ME follows feature to create multilingual production feeds. For example, you can have ME 2 follow ME 1 to simultaneously produce multiple feeds. When a source is selected on ME 1, the same source is selected on ME 2. With the substitution table you can have it that when camera 1 is selected on ME 1 the follow will select camera 1 on ME 2 but the substitution table substitutes camera 4 for camera 1 on ME 2. Refer to [ME Follows](#) on page 76 for information on setting up ME follows.

### Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when working with substitution tables:

- If you want to create a substitution for an auto-select key, you must set up a substitution for both the fill and the alpha.
- Selecting a crosspoint directly on a bus that has a substitution set up for it overrides the substitution. The substitution continues when a new source is selected on the leading bus.

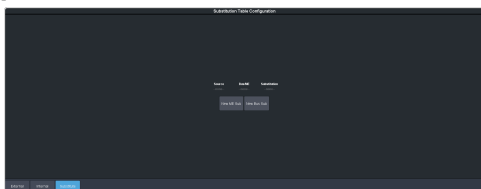
### To Set Up a Substitution Table

The substitution table is a single table that allows you to specify a different source that should be taken when a specific source is selected on a bus.

**Note:** The substitution table requires an ME follow to be set up between the buses to trigger the substitution.

**Tip:** When you select the Source on the ME/Bus, the Substitution source is taken instead.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Inputs > Substitutional**.



2. Click **New ME Sub** or **New Bus Sub** to select the type of substitution table you want to set up.
  - **New ME Sub** — create a substitution on a ME.
  - **New Bus Sub** — create a substitution on a key bus of an ME or an aux bus.
3. Click the **Source** button and select the source that you want to substitute with another source.
4. Click the **ME** or **Bus** button and select the area that you want the substitution to occur on.
5. Click the **Substitution** button and select source you want to substitute for the selected one. Repeat for any additional substitutions you want to create.
6. Click **Save**.

# Video Outputs

Any source in the switcher can be routed to one of the outputs and each output can be assigned to an NDI® stream.

## Video Output Setup

You can assign a video source or bus to an output and each output is assigned as an NDI® stream.

Switcher outputs are assigned to NDI® streams.

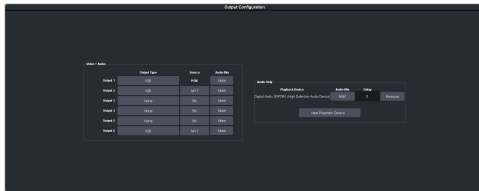
**Note:** If you do not have a valid license, or are using a trial version, *Not Licensed* is shown on all the outputs of the switcher.

### To Set up a Video Output

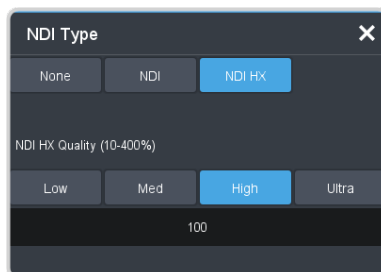
Assign video sources or buses to the output and the output to a framebuffer. Some outputs are fixed to a specific video signal.

**Tip:** Refer to [To Configure Audio Outputs](#) on page 51 for information on embedding audio sources in the video outputs.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > Outputs**.



2. Click on the **Output Type** button for the output that you want to assign an output type to.



**Note:** You can only assign up to 4 outputs to NDI HX.

- **None** — turn off the output.
- **NDI** — assign the output to a standard NDI® (high bandwidth) stream. The NDI® streams will appear as the network name of the PC running Carbonite Code followed by the name of switcher output.

- **NDI HX** — assign the output to an NDI HX (low bandwidth) stream using the AVC (H.264) compression standard. The NDI® streams will appear as the network name of the PC running Carbonite Code followed by the name of switcher output.

3. (NDI HX Only) Select the **NDI HX Quality** button for the bandwidth presets you want to use. Higher quality means higher bit-rate, higher resolution, and higher network bandwidth.

- **Low** (10-49%) — for use with poor network conditions, minimizing lag at the cost of video quality.
- **Medium** (50-99%) — for use with average network conditions, balancing image quality with network bandwidth usage.
- **High** (100-149%) — for use with good network conditions, prioritizing image quality at the cost of higher bandwidth.
- **Ultra** (150-400%) — for use with excellent network conditions where bandwidth is not a limitation.

**Tip:** Click the field below the preset button and use the punch-pad to enter a custom value to adjust bandwidth and quality of the NDI HX output stream. Use this to fine tune a balance between image quality and the bandwidth your network can support.

4. Click on the **Source** button for the output that you want to assign a source to.

**Note:** Output 1 is locked to Program.



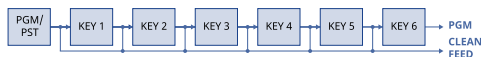
5. Click the video source that you want to assign to the output.

- **Physical** — the source inputs to the switcher.
  - **XX** — input XX
  - **XXA** — input XX alpha
- **Internal** — the internally generated sources of the switcher (ME).
  - **BK** — black
  - **BG** — matte generator
  - **PGM** — main program output of the switcher
  - **PRV** — main preview output of the switcher

- **CLN** — clean feed for main program of switcher
- **MEX** — main program output of ME *X*
- **MEXPV** — main preview output of ME *X*
- **MEXCL** — clean feed output of ME *X*
- **CKX** — chroma key *X* video
- **CKXA** — chroma key *X* alpha
- **MVX** — output of MultiViewer *X*.
- **Aux Follows** — the aux buses.
  - **AUXXX** — output of aux bus *XX*
- **ME Follows** — the background, preset, and key buses of each ME.
  - **MEXBg** — source on background of ME *X* (if installed)
  - **MEXPst** — source on preset output of ME *X* (if installed)
  - **MEXKYV** — key *Y* video of ME *X* (if installed)
  - **MEXKYA** — key *Y* alpha of ME *X* (if installed)

## FlexiClean Clean Feed

FlexiClean clean feed provides a second program output per ME that is derived from a different point in the video layering than the standard program output. The clean feed can be set to come before any key in the video layering for an ME. This allows you to remove particular keys without affecting the primary program output.



### Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when working with clean feeds:

- Recalling a memory register using MemoryAI may cause the clean feed output to look different than expected. MemoryAI allows key elements to be recalled to other keys than originally resulting in different key layering.

### To Set Up Clean Feed

Clean Feed can be taken before any or all of the keyers on an ME. This allows you to have a secondary output of an ME without any branding for re-broadcast or archival.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > ME.**



2. Click an **ME *X* Clean Feed** button to select which key the clean feed for that ME is taken before.

The selected key, and all keys after it, are not included in the clean feed output.

## ME Follows

An ME can be linked to another ME so that actions performed on the first are duplicated on the following.

### Keep the following in mind:

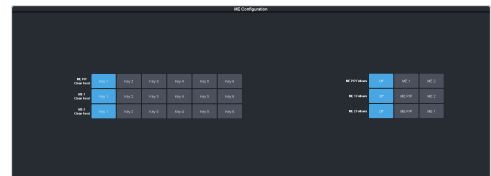
Keep the following in mind when working with ME Follows:

- There must be available resources for the following ME.
- Memories and resets are also performed on the following ME.
- Chroma Key initialization is only performed on the leading ME. The following ME gets the same chroma key parameters as the leading ME.
- You cannot cascade/re-enter follows. For example, if ME 1 is following ME 2, ME 2 cannot be set to following anything and no other ME can follow ME 1.

### To Set Up an ME Follow

Set an ME to follow another ME. Actions on the first ME are duplicated on the following ME.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > ME.**



2. Click the **ME *X* Follow** button for the ME that you want ME *X* to follow.

---

For example, click **ME 2** in the **ME 1 Follow** row to have actions performed on ME 2 duplicated on ME 1.

*Tip:* Select **Off** to have the ME not follow anything.

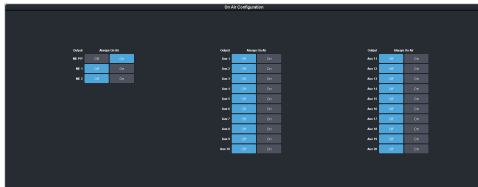
## On-Air Setting

Some switcher outputs can be set to be considered on-air or not. This allows you to set which outputs are tallied, how resource allocation is divided, and how the Roll Clip feature works.

### To Set the On-Air Status for an Output

Set an output to be on-air to tally sources that are selected on that bus.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > On Air**.



2. Click an **Always OnAir** button for an output to select whether the output is considered on-air (**On**) or not (**Off**).

*Tip:* Setting an output to be always on-air tallies sources that are selected on that bus, or are going to be taken on-air with the next transition.

# MultiViewer

The MultiViewer allows you to view multiple video sources from a single output. Video inputs or outputs on the switcher, including Program and Preview, can be assigned to any box on the MultiViewer.

A time-clock can be added as an overlay to the MultiViewer showing system time.

## Keep the following in mind:

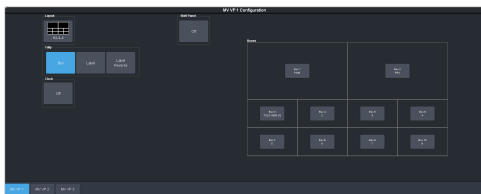
Keep the following in mind when working with a MultiViewer:

- Inputs are displayed with a red border when they are on-air. A green border is displayed when the input is selected on the Preset bus.

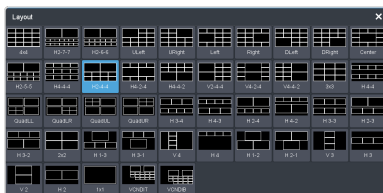
## To Set Up a MultiViewer

**Note:** A MultiViewer must be assigned to a video output to be usable.

- Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > MultiViewers** and click the **MV VP** button for the MultiViewer you want to set up.



- Click the **Layout** button and select the arrangement of the boxes that you want to use for the selected MultiViewer.



- Use the **Transparency** slider to adjust the transparency of the background behind the source label for the selected MultiViewer.
- Apply an overlay to the MultiViewer as follows:
  - Click the **Overlay** button and click **On** to turn the overlay on, or **Off** to turn it off.

**Tip:** The overlay can be used to overlay a camera shot of a shot-clock over the MultiViewer output.

- Click the **Source** button for the video source that you want to overlay over the MultiViewer output.

- Use the **Clip** slider to adjust the clipping of the overlay source.

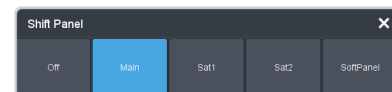
At **0%** the overlay source is completely opaque, and at **100%** it is completely transparent.

- Click a **Tally** button to select how boxes on the MultiViewer are tallied.

- Box** — red or green border is shown around the outside of the MultiViewer box
- Label** — red or green boxes are shown inside the label area of the MultiViewer box
- Label Reverse** — the same as Label, but the placement of the tally boxes is swapped

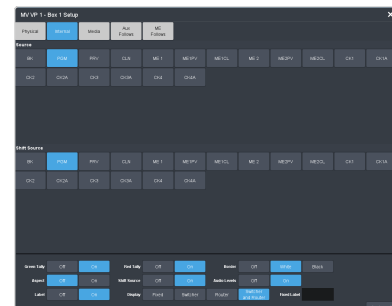
- Click **Shift Panel** and select the panel that you want the MultiViewer shift to be active on. When the **Shift** button is pressed on the assigned control panel the MultiViewer shows the shifted sources.

**Note:** The shift function can only be assigned to a single panel at a time.



**Tip:** When the MultiViewer Shift is active, the box buttons on the layout show the shifted source in brackets.

- Click on one of the **Boxes** buttons and set up how that box appears on the MultiViewer in the standard and shifted configuration.



- Physical** — the source inputs to the switcher.
- Internal** — the internally generated sources of the switcher (ME).
- Media** — the Media-Store and MediaWipe sources.



- **Aux Follows** — the aux buses.
- **ME Follows** — the background, preset, and key buses of each ME.

8. Select how you want that box to appear on the MultiViewer.

**Tip:** Click **Apply to All** to have the settings for the current box applied to all boxes in MultiViewer. This does not include what video source is assigned to the box.

Option	Description
<b>Green Tally</b>	Turn the preview (green) tally for the box on or off.
<b>Red Tally</b>	Turn the program (red) tally for the box on or off.
<b>Border</b>	Turn the border around the box off ( <b>Off</b> ), white ( <b>White</b> ), or black ( <b>Black</b> ). When the border is turned off, some distortion may be visible around the edges of the box. Border is not available for ViewControl layouts.
<b>Aspect</b>	Turn aspect ratio markers for the box on ( <b>Aspect</b> ) or off ( <b>Off</b> ).
<b>Shift Source</b>	Turn the shifted source on ( <b>On</b> ) or off ( <b>Off</b> ) for the selected box. When the MultiViewer is shifted, the source in this box will not change.
<b>Audio Levels</b>	Turn on an audio meter for the audio associated with the video source in the selected box. Up to 16 audio channels can be shown.
<b>Label</b>	Turn source labels for the box off, or on in a selected position.
<b>Display</b>	Select what name is shows on the label. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Fixed</b> — show only the text entered in the <b>Fixed Label</b> field as the name.</li> <li>• <b>Switcher</b> — show only the internal mnemonic name.</li> <li>• <b>Router</b> — show only the TSL UMD name.</li> <li>• <b>Switcher and Router</b> — show both the internal and TSL UMD name</li> </ul> <p><b>Tip:</b> If you select a source on an aux bus that does not have a TSL UMD name, the mnemonic name is used instead on the MultiViewer.</p>

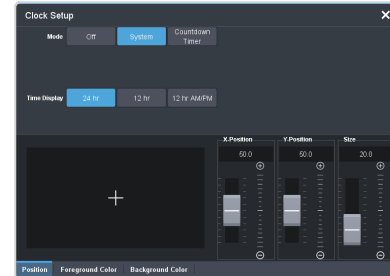
## MultiViewer Clock

The clock can show the current system time or a countdown timer. The clock can only operate in a single mode at one time.

### To Set Up a MultiViewer System Clock

The clock can show the current system time in 12-hour or 24-hour format (hh:mm:ss).

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > MultiViewers** and select the MultiViewer that you want to apply the clock overlay to.
2. Click **Clock > System**.



3. Click a **Time Display** button to set how the time is displayed.
  - **24 hr** — time is displayed in 24-hour format.
  - **12 hr** — time is displayed in 12-hour format without am/pm.
  - **12 hr AM/PM** — time is displayed in 12-hour format with am/pm.
4. Click the **Position** tab.
5. Use the **X Position**, **Y Position**, and **Size** sliders to position the clock and change the size.
6. Click the **Foreground Color** tab and select the color and transparency you want to use for the text of the clock.



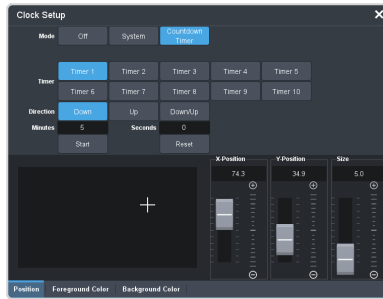
7. Click the **Background Color** tab and select the color and transparency you want to use for the background of the clock.

### To Set Up a MultiViewer Countdown Timer

The clock can show a countdown timer that will count down from a set time to 0, up from 0, or down from a set time to 0 and then up.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > MultiViewers** and select the MultiViewer that you want to apply the clock overlay to.
2. Click **Clock > Countdown Timer**.





3. Click a **Timer** button to select which countdown timer you want to use. Each timer can be set up differently.

**Note:** *Timer are shared across all MultiViewers.*

4. Click a **Direction** button to select the direction that the times counts in.
  - **Down** — enter a time in the **Minutes** and **Seconds** field that the timer will start counting down from. The timer stops when it reaches 0.
  - **Up** — the timer counts up from 0 until stopped.
  - **Down/Up** — enter a time in the **Minutes** and **Seconds** field that the timer will start counting down from. The timer counts down to 0 and then starts counting up until stopped.

**Tip:** *You can manually control the countdown timer using the **Start** and **Reset** buttons, or assign these commands to custom controls.*

5. Click the **Position** tab.
6. Use the **X Position**, **Y Position**, and **Size** sliders to position the clock and change the size.
7. Click the **Foreground Color** tab and select the color and transparency you want to use for the text of the clock.



8. Click the **Background Color** tab and select the color and transparency you want to use for the background of the clock.

# Personality

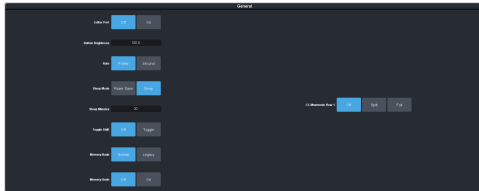
Personality settings allow you to configure how you interact with the control panel and switcher, as well as how the buttons on the control panel appear. All of these settings are stored in the Personality register.

## Personality Settings

There are a number of settings for how the switcher will react to different situations, or how switcher elements appear to the operator. All these settings are grouped together into the Switcher Personality. These settings include double-press rates and sleep time, among others.

### General Settings

- Click **Navigation Menu > Personality > General**, or **Transition** for the transition settings.



Personality	Description
<b>Editor Port</b>	Allow the switcher to be controlled by an external editor. The external editor can control the switcher to perform transitions, or recall memories, among the supported commands. This setting is for the frame. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>On</b> — allow the switcher to be controlled by an external editor.</li> <li><b>Off</b> — switcher ignores editor commands.</li> </ul>
<b>Button Brightness</b>	Set the overall brightness (0-100%) of all the buttons on any physical control panel connected to the switcher. This setting is unique to the control panel.
<b>Rate</b>	Have the switcher use frames or seconds for transition rates. Rates are entered and displayed in the select selected values. This setting is unique to the control panel. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Frames</b> — transition rates are in frames.</li> <li><b>Seconds</b> — transition rates are in seconds.</li> </ul>

Personality	Description
<b>Sleep Mode</b>	have the switcher go into a sleep mode after a user-defined amount of time ( <b>Sleep Minutes</b> ) without user interaction. Touching any button, knob, or fader will wake the switcher. The switcher does not act on the button, knob, or fader control that wakes it from sleep mode. During sleep mode, video related hardware is not affected and video signals still pass through the switcher. This setting is unique to the control panel. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Power Save</b> — all buttons and displays are turned off and as much power is conserved as possible.</li> <li><b>Sleep</b> — displays are turned off and buttons light in raindrop pattern.</li> </ul>
<b>Sleep Minutes</b>	The amount of time that the switcher waits without user input before going into sleep mode. Setting the value to <b>0</b> (Off) prevents the switcher from entering sleep mode. This setting is unique to the control panel.
<b>Toggle Shift</b>	Have the <b>Shift</b> button either be latching (toggle) or momentary (off). When in toggle mode, you can press the shift button and then select a source on the shifted bus without having to hold down the shift button. This only affects the bus the shift button is on. This setting is unique to the control panel. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Off</b> — the <b>Shift</b> button only stays on as long as you are holding it down.</li> <li><b>Toggle</b> — when you press the <b>Shift</b> button it stays on until you press a source button on that bus.</li> </ul>
<b>Memory Bank</b>	Allows you to set how the <b>BANK</b> button behaves when pressed and released. This setting is unique to the control panel. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Normal</b> — the keypad is used to enter the bank number directly, followed by the memory (For example, to access memory 3 on bank 2, press <b>BANK &gt; 2 &gt; 3</b>.)</li> <li><b>Legacy</b> — the next bank is selected every time the button is pressed, cycling through all banks (For example, to access bank 5, press <b>BANK</b> repeatedly until bank 5 is selected.)</li> </ul>
<b>Memory Undo</b>	A memory recall can be reversed by pressing the memory number a second time after a memory is recalled. This is the same as pressing the <b>UNDO</b> button, if present on your control panel. This setting is unique to the control panel. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Off</b> — pressing the memory number again does not undo the recall.</li> <li><b>On</b> — pressing the memory number again undoes the last memory recall.</li> </ul>

## Transition Settings

- Click **Navigation Menu** > **Personality** > **Transition**.



Personality	Description
<b>Transition</b>	<p>Have the next transition reset to a default background dissolve after each transition. This allows you to prevent the selections from the last transition from being accidentally included with the next transition. This setting is for the frame.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>No Reset</b> — the next transition settings are not changed after a transition.</li> <li><b>Reset</b> — the next transition is reset to a background only transition after a transition.</li> </ul>
<b>Next Transition</b>	<p>Have the next transition buttons on the control panel latch when pressed (toggle). This setting is unique to the control panel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Off</b> — press and hold all the buttons you want included in the next transition. All buttons must be pressed at the same time.</li> <li><b>Toggle</b> — press a button to toggle it on or off as being included in the next transition.</li> </ul>
<b>Remove Keys</b>	<p>Have a key removed from the next transition after it has been transitioned off-air using key Cut or Trans buttons. This allows you to transition a key off-air in an emergency and not have it accidentally transitioned back on-air with the next transition. This setting is for the frame.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Off</b> — key can remain part of the next transition when it is independently transitioned off-air.</li> <li><b>On</b> — key is removed as part of the next transition when it is independently transitioned off-air.</li> </ul>
<b>Background Double Press</b>	<p>Have a double-press of the next transition background button select the background and all on-air keys as part of the next transition. This setting is unique to the control panel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ignore</b> — ignore the double-press of the next transition background button.</li> <li><b>Transition Clear</b> — set the next transition to include the background and only the on-air keys. If an off-key is selected as part of the next transition it is deselected.</li> </ul>

Personality	Description
<b>ME Auto Trans Double Press</b>	<p>Set what action is performed when the auto transition button is pressed again during a transition. This setting is for the frame.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Halt Forward</b> — the transition is halted and then continues in the same direction when the transition button is pressed again.</li> <li><b>Reverse</b> — the transition immediately reverses directions when the transition button is pressed.</li> <li><b>Halt Reverse</b> — the transition is halted and then reverses directions when the transition button is pressed again.</li> <li><b>Cut</b> — the transition immediately cuts back to the initial state when the transition button is pressed.</li> <li><b>Ignore</b> — the button press is ignored and the transition continues.</li> </ul>
<b>Key Auto Trans Double Press</b>	<p>Set what action is performed when the independent key auto transition button is pressed again during a transition. This setting is for the frame.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Halt Forward</b> — the transition is halted and then continues in the same direction when the transition button is pressed again.</li> <li><b>Reverse</b> — the transition immediately reverses directions when the transition button is pressed.</li> <li><b>Halt Reverse</b> — the transition is halted and then reverses directions when the transition button is pressed again.</li> <li><b>Cut</b> — the transition immediately cuts back to the initial state when the transition button is pressed.</li> <li><b>Ignore</b> — the button press is ignored and the transition continues.</li> </ul>
<b>Roll Clip</b>	<p>Set whether the roll clip feature is always on, or must be turned on manually. This setting is for the frame.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>User</b> — the roll clip feature must be turned on manually.</li> <li><b>Force</b> — the roll clip feature is always on.</li> </ul>

## Color Schemes

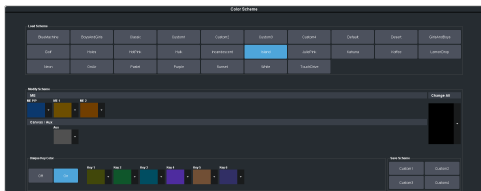
The buttons on the control panel glow with different colors specific to their state, function, and assignment. This color can be selected from a list of pre-set color schemes, or a custom color can be selected. Up to four (4) custom color schemes can be saved on the switcher.

### To Select a Color Scheme

ME, aux buses, and keyers can be set to different colors by loading one of the pre-installed color

scheme. This setting is unique to the control panel.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Personality > Color Scheme**.



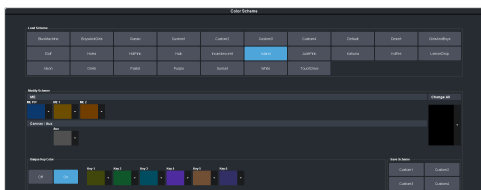
2. In the **Load Scheme** area, select the color scheme you want to use on the control panel.

**Tip:** You can load a pre-loaded color scheme and then modify the colors and save it as a custom color scheme. You cannot save your modifications back to the pre-loaded color scheme.

## To Create a Custom Color Scheme

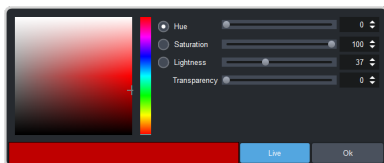
A custom color scheme can be created and used instead of one of the pre-loaded color schemes. This setting is unique to the control panel.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Personality > Color Scheme**.



2. **Tip:** Click **Change All** to change the color of all the areas at once. They will all use the selected color.

3. Use the color picker to select the new color you want to use and click **Ok**.



**Tip:** Click **Live** to have the color changes update in real time on the control panel.

4. In the **Unique Key Color** area select how you want the keyer buttons on the control panel to be colored.
  - **On** — the keyer buttons use the unique colors assigned to each key. Click the key that you want to change the color for and use the color picker to change the color.

5. Click a **Custom X** button to store your color scheme to that location.
6. Click **Yes**.

## Bus Maps

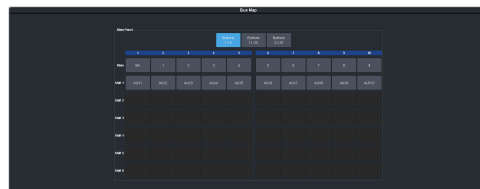
Any video input can be mapped to any source button on the control panel using a bus map. Each source button can have two inputs assigned (a standard source and a shifted source).

### To Create a Bus Map

The bus map assigns video sources to the buttons on the control panel.

**Note:** The bus map is unique to the control panel (Main, Sat 1, Sat 2, or Sat 3) and can only be set for that control panel.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Personality > Bus Map**.



2. Click the source button that you want to assign a source to and select the source you want to assign to that button.

**Tip:** You must assign a button to the Shift function to be able to access those source buttons on the control panel.



## User Buttons

These buttons can be assigned to a number of functions, including ME and key selections, custom control, and memories. The number and position of the buttons on the control panel depend on the model of your control panel.

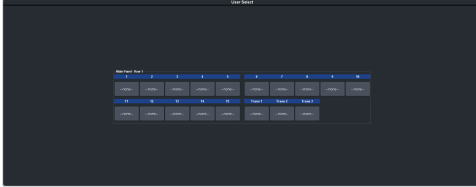
If a button is assigned to an ME, aux bus, or chroma key, you can press and hold the button to be able to select a different ME, aux bus, or chroma key. If the user button is assigned to an Aux, it will allow you to select a different Aux.

---

## To Set A User Button

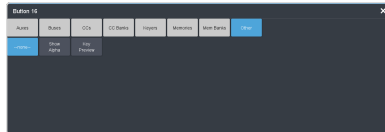
1. Click **Navigation Menu > Personality > User Select.**

**Note:** The menu only shows the user buttons that are available on your control panel.



2. Click the user button that you want to assign a function to and select the function you want to assign to that button.

**Tip:** Each row on your control panel can have a separate set of user button assignment. These settings are tied to the row, and not the ME that is assigned to that row.



**Note:** The functions that are available on your switcher may differ depending on the options you have installed and how your switcher is configured.

# ViewControl

The ViewControl interface through DashBoard allows you to coordinate the control over the Carbonite switcher and other devices through custom controls and transitions.

## Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when working with ViewControl:

- ViewControl requires DashBoard 5.1, or later.
- Only the sources assigned to the MultiViewer boxes are available for direct selection. Custom controls can be used to select other sources.
- The MultiViewer Shift must be set to the main or satellite panel that the DashBoard you are using for ViewControl is assigned to.

## ViewControl Overview

The ViewControl interface provides quick access to a number of custom control buttons as well as the transition functionality of the switcher.

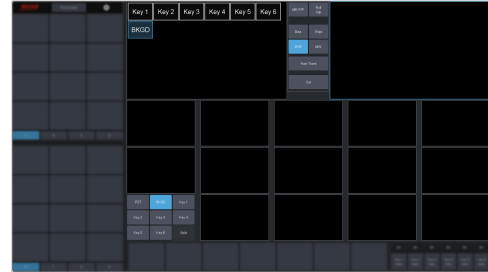
### Custom Control Buttons

The custom control buttons can be assigned to any custom control on the switcher and given unique names and icons. The button groups on the left (shown below) are organized into groups, or tabs. The buttons along the bottom are constant across all tabs.



### Bus Selection Buttons

The bus selection buttons allow you to select the different buses on different ME and MiniME™ outputs of the switcher.



## To Select a Source on a Bus

1. Click at the top and click the ME or MiniME™ that you want to select a bus on.

*Tip: If the Shift feature is active the Program and Preview boxes will switch to the selected ME or MiniME™.*

2. Click the bus you want to select a source on at the lower left.
3. Click on the source (MultiViewer box) that you want to assign to the selected bus.

*Tip: Click **Shift** to access the sources on the shifted MultiViewer boxes.*

## Keyer Transition Buttons

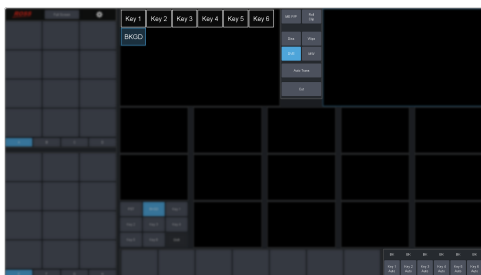
The Keyer Transition buttons allow you to perform a cut or dissolve of the keys on the selected ME or MiniME™. These buttons act the same as the Keyer Transition Buttons on the control panel.

*Tip: The Cut buttons tallies when a key is on. Red when the key is on-air or blue when it is on for an ME or MiniME™ that isn't on-air.*



## Transition Buttons

The transition buttons allow you to select what is included in the next transition, what type of transition is to be performed, and perform the transition. These buttons function similarly to the buttons in the Transition Area on the control panel.



### To Perform a Transition

1. Click the button and select the ME or MiniME™ that you want to perform the transition on.
2. Click the **BKGD** and **Key** button over the Preview box to select what to include in the next transition.
3. Click **Auto** to perform the transition, or **Cut** to perform a cut transition.

## Custom Control Button Setup

When you assign a custom control to a button, you can give that button a unique name and assign an icon to it. The images for the icons must be on a USB drive in the frame when you assign them. Once assigned the icons are stored in the frame and the USB can be removed. Each of the tabs can be named.

The configuration of the tabs and custom control assignment to buttons are stored with the switcher personality settings.

### To Set up the Custom Control Buttons

You must assign custom controls from the switcher to the buttons on ViewControl.

If you want to assign icons to the custom control buttons, you must have the images you want to use for the icons stored on a USB drive installed in the frame. After the images have been assigned you can remove the USB drive.

1. Click the  button.



2. Press the custom control button that you want to set up.
3. Enter a name for the button in the **Button Name** field.

**Tip:** You can change the name of a tab by selecting a button on the tab and then entering a new name in the **Group Name** field.

4. Click the **Bank** button and select the number of the bank you want to select a custom control from.
5. Click the **CC X** button and select the number of the custom control you want to assign to the button.
6. Navigate the files on the USB drive and click the image you want to assign as the icon for the button.

**Tip:** Press **Default Icon** to switch back to the default icon.

7. Set up additional custom control buttons as required.
8. Press **Save** when you are done setting up custom control buttons.

## ViewControl Setup

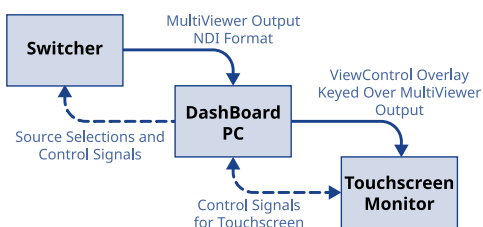
ViewControl is set up to use a direct NDI® stream on specific MultiViewer layouts.

### Connecting ViewControl over NDI®

ViewControl combines an overlay image from DashBoard with a custom MultiViewer output from the switcher to generate the interface.



**Important:** ViewControl over NDI® is not supported on computers running the macOS® operating system at this time.



The following connections are required for ViewControl:

- Set the output resolution of the DashBoard computer to either 1920×1080 or 1280×720.
- Set up a MultiViewer to use one of the ViewControl layouts that support NDI®.
- Connect the USB cable for the touchscreen to the DashBoard computer.



## Keep the following in mind:

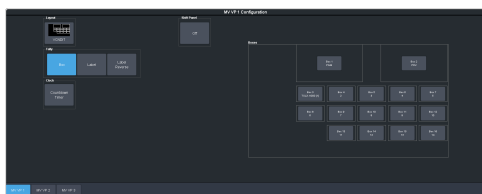
Keep the following in mind when working with NDI®:

- The MultiViewer must be set to **VCNDIT** or **VCNDIB** for the NDI® settings to be available in ViewControl.
- The NDI® Access Manager from the NDI® Tools ([ndi.video](#)) may be required for the NDI® stream to appear in ViewControl.
- If required, the NDI® Access Manager must be installed on the DashBoard computer running ViewControl.
- When using the NDI® Access Manager you will need to add the IP address of the NDI® converter to the **Remote Sources** tab.
- You may have to restart the DashBoard computer running the NDI® Access Manager before the NDI® stream becomes visible to ViewControl.

## To Set Up the MultiViewer for ViewControl over NDI®

ViewControl integrates the MultiViewer output of the switcher with a graphical overlay from DashBoard to provide live video in the ViewControl windows. The MultiViewer must be configured to properly align the video for the buttons on ViewControl.

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > MultiViewers** and click **MV VP 1**.

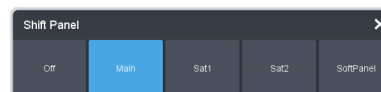


2. Click the **Layout** button and select a ViewControl layout for NDI®.
  - **VCNDIT** — (**ViewControl Top**) places the boxes at the top of the screen.
  - **VCNDIB** — (**ViewControl Bottom**) places the boxes at the bottom of the screen.

**Tip:** You must select one of the NDI® layouts to be able to select the NDI® input stream.

3. Click **Shift Panel** and select the panel that you will be operating ViewControl from. When the **Shift** button is pressed on the assigned control panel the MultiViewer shows the shifted sources.

**Note:** The shift function must be active for the PRV and PGM boxes on the MultiViewer to switch to the active ME.



**Tip:** When the MultiViewer Shift is active, the box buttons on the layout show the shifted source in brackets.

4. Click on one of the **Boxes** buttons and set up how that box appears on the MultiViewer.
5. Click on the source you want to select for the box.

**Note:** The large box on the left should always be assigned to **PV** and the large box on the right assigned to **PGM**.

## To Set Up ViewControl for NDI®

Select the NDI® stream that is coming from the switcher that has the MultiViewer video stream.

**Note:** Refer to the documentation that came with your SDI to NDI® Converter for information on setting it up.

1. Click the  button.



2. Click **Update NDI Source List** and click the NDI® source that has the MultiViewer output from the switcher.

**Note:** The MultiViewer must be set to one of the NDI® layouts for the NDI® source selection to be available.

3. Click an **NDI Quality** button to select if you want to use the normal (**High**) or low bandwidth (**Low**) stream.
4. Click **Save**.

# MultiPanel

Each frame supports up to 3 independent control connections (Main, Satellite 1, Satellite 2). Each connection can be from a control panel, DashBoard, or a combination of the two. Add devices on the same control connection mirror each other.

The independent control connections are selected by the port you connect to on the frame. Multiple panels and DashBoard connections can connect on the same port, but they will all share the same permissions and mirror each other for control.

- **Main Panel** — 5253 (5258 NAT)
- **Satellite 1** — 5255 (5259 NAT)
- **Satellite 2** — 5256 (5260 NAT)
- **SoftPanel** — 5257 (5261 NAT)

## Keep the following in mind:

Keep the following in mind when working with MultiPanel:

- SoftPanel shares the permissions of the Main Panel.
- The assignment of the panel ID is done from the control panel.
- Control panel specific personality settings are stored on the frame for the panel ID and are not tied to the control panel.
- DashBoard automatically follows the main panel but will ignore permissions set for the main panel.
- If you change switcher modes, the MultiPanel permissions may have to be set again.
- An undo of a memory recall ignores panel permissions and will undo the last memory recalled from any panel.
- Bus maps are specific to each control panel. Creating or updating a bus map for one control panel does not change the bus map on another control panel.
- Custom controls ignore control panel permissions and will run events on an ME that the control panel does not have permission for.

## To Set Up MultiPanel Permissions

1. Click **Navigation Menu > Configuration > System > MultiPanel**.



2. Click a **Main**, **Sat 1**, or **Sat 2** button to select whether that control connection has access to that resource.

**Note:** SoftPanel and Main share the same permissions.

**Note:** A control panel must have permission to at least one ME.

## MIDI Controller

The MIDI controller is used to control the RAVE audio mixer. The controller connects to the switcher through DashBoard.

For these procedures you will need the following files. They are available with these instructions in your download.

- X-TOUCH-map###.controller
- Mapping Wizard.grid
- X-TOUCH-LayerA###.bin
- X-TOUCH-LayerB###.bin



**Important:** The revision numbers (####) of the .controller and .bin files must match.

MIDI and MMA are trademarks of the MIDI Manufacturers Association.

### Compatibility

The MIDI controller and bin files are only compatible with specific versions of switcher software.

X-TOUCH Files	Switcher Software
<b>Version 1:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• X-TOUCH-map001.controller</li><li>• X-TOUCH-LayerA001.bin</li><li>• X-TOUCH-LayerB001.bin</li></ul>	Graphite 1.2
<b>Version 2:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• X-TOUCH-map002.controller</li><li>• X-TOUCH-LayerA002.bin</li><li>• X-TOUCH-LayerB002.bin</li></ul>	Graphite 2.0
<b>Version 3:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• X-TOUCH-map003.controller</li><li>• X-TOUCH-LayerA003.bin</li><li>• X-TOUCH-LayerB003.bin</li></ul>	Graphite 2.2
<b>Version 4:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• X-TOUCH-map004.controller</li><li>• X-TOUCH-LayerA004.bin</li><li>• X-TOUCH-LayerB004.bin</li></ul>	Graphite 2.3
<b>Version 5:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• X-TOUCH-map005.controller</li><li>• X-TOUCH-LayerA005.bin</li><li>• X-TOUCH-LayerB005.bin</li></ul>	Graphite 2.4 or higher
	Ultra 4.0 or higher
	Graphite CPC 1.0 or higher

## To Connect the X-TOUCH COMPACT to DashBoard

DashBoard allows you to configure the MIDI controller connected to RAVE audio mixer.



**Important:** Refer to the documentation that came with your X-TOUCH COMPACT for proper handling and setup instructions.

1. Plug the MIDI controller into one of the USB ports on Carbonite Code or the DashBoard computer connected to the switcher.
2. Launch DashBoard.
3. Click **File > New > Other**.
4. Click **Input Devices > New MIDI Controller**.
5. Click **Next**
6. Enter the settings for the MIDI Controller:
  - **Display Name** — enter a name for the controller
  - **Slot** — select **1**
  - **Controller** — select **X-TOUCH COMPACT**
7. Click **Finish**.  
The MIDI controller appears in the **Tree View**.

## To Configure the X-TOUCH COMPACT Interface

A custom DashBoard panel is used to automatically do all the mapping for the X-TOUCH COMPACT.

You will need the Mapping Wizard.grid file that came with your software.

1. Launch DashBoard.
2. Click **File > Open File**, navigate to the Mapping Wizard.grid file and click **Open**.
3. In the **MIDI** field, select **X-TOUCH COMPACT**.
4. In the **Graphite** field, select **Audio Mixer**.
5. Click **DO EVERYTHING FOR ME**.

## To Configure the Button Layers on the X-TOUCH COMPACT

The Layer A and Layer B files assign the controls on the X-TOUCH COMPACT to MIDI Commands

Default layer files are provided on the product resources disk, or you can customize your own.

**Note:** The layer files must match the map file that you load in DashBoard.

1. Connect the X-TOUCH COMPACT to the server.
2. Launch the **X-TOUCH Editor** application that came with your controller.
3. Click the **GLOBAL** tab.
4. Click **LOAD** in the **PRESETS ON COMPUTER** area and click **Yes**.
5. Select the X-TOUCH-LayerA####.bin file and click **Open**.
6. Wait for the file to be loaded and click **Close** on the success dialog box.
7. Click **Dump A** in the **TO HARDWARE** area.
8. Click **Yes** to start the upload and **Close** on the success dialog box.
9. Repeat these steps to load the X-TOUCH-LayerB####.bin file and click **Dump B**.

## To Map Buttons to Functions

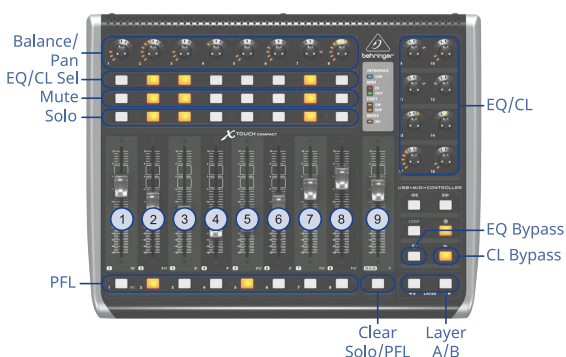
The map file associates RAVE audio mixer functions to buttons on the X-TOUCH COMPACT.

A default map file is provided on the product resources disk, or you can customize your own.

1. Double-click the **MIDI Controller** node in the DashBoard Tree View.
2. Click **Load > Browse** and select the X-TOUCH-map####.controller file.
3. Click **Open > Restore**.

## Default X-TOUCH COMPACT Mapping

The default mapping comes from the map and layer files that are included on the Product Resources disk.



**Note:** The **Clear** button clears the Solo selections on Layer A and the PFL selections on Layer B.

## Fader Mapping

The faders are mapped differently on the A and B layer.

Fader	Layer A	Layer B
1	Audio 1	Audio 9
2	Audio 2	Audio 10
3	Audio 3	Audio 11
4	Audio 4	Audio 12
5	Audio 5	Audio 13
6	Audio 6	Audio 14
7	Audio 7	Audio 15
8	Audio 8	Audio 16
9	MAIN	MONITOR

**Note:** The default assignment is based on the default fader configuration. If you change what is assigned to any of the assignable faders (Audio X) used on the default map, the audio sources those faders control also changes. For example, if you assign **Audio 5** to SDI 5, the stripe on the midi panel will control SDI 5 audio instead of the PC input.

## Custom Mapping

You can change the current mapping of functions to the buttons, knobs, and sliders on the X-TOUCH COMPACT. The DashBoard controller lists all the inputs on the MIDI controller and allows you to assign a DashBoard OID to them.



**Important:** Although you can assign different functions to the knobs, sliders, and buttons on the panel, some functions may require changes to the layers in the **X-TOUCH Editor** application. Refer to the documentation that came with your X-TOUCH COMPACT for more information.

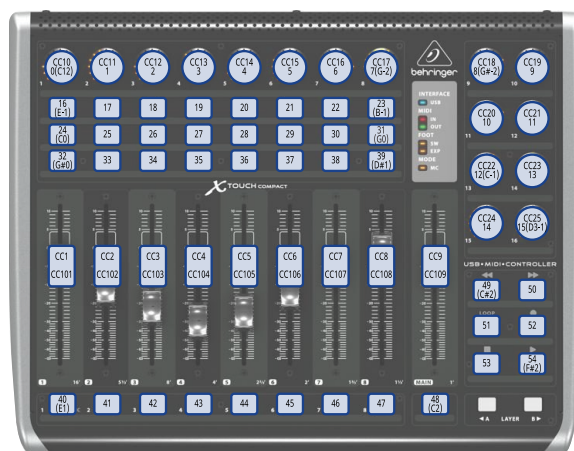
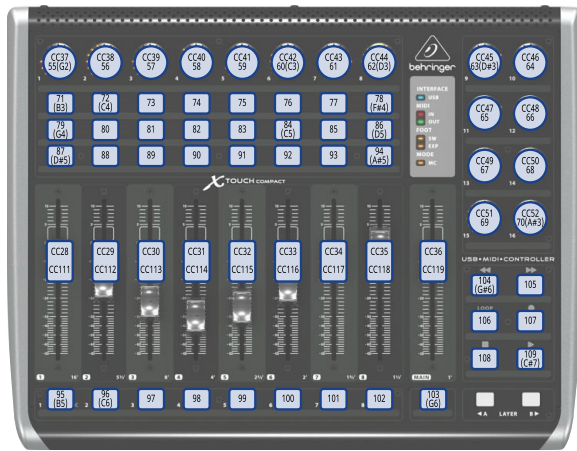


Figure 6: Layer A Button IDs

**Note:** Buttons CC27 and CC26 on Layer A are the Foot Switch and Expression Pedal connections on the back of the panel.



**Figure 7: Layer B Button IDs**

**Note:** Buttons CC64 and CC63 on Layer B are the Foot Switch and Expression Pedal connections on the back of the panel.

For the CC knobs and sliders, the top number is the action when the knob or slider is turned or moved, and the second is when it is pushed or touched.

Refer to the documentation that came with your Behringer X-TOUCH COMPACT for more information on how MIDI IDs are assigned to buttons.

## To Create a Custom Button Mapping

You can assign any audio mixer function to a button, slider, or knob on the X-TOUCH COMPACT

1. Double-click the **MIDI Controller** node in the DashBoard Tree View.

**Tip:** If you want to start with a blank list, click **Load > Factory Default**.

**Note:** The **Value** column shows the current data coming from the connected MIDI controller.

2. In the **Continuous Controllers** table, set up the knobs and sliders you want to use on the panel. The numbers for these has the **CC** prefix.
  - a) Locate the **ID** for the knob or slider you want to assign a function to. Refer to [Custom Mapping](#) on page 90 for a diagram to locate the knob or slider.
  - b) In the **Mapped OID** field, enter the OID for the function you want to assign to the knob or slider. Refer to [MIDI Device OID List](#) on page 141 for a list of OIDs.

- c) Click the **Transformation** list and select the type of action for the knob or slider. Sliders should be set to **Volume dB** and knobs to **Middle Point**.
  - **Disabled** — the knob or slider is disabled.
  - **Volume dB** — the slider is configured for volume control.
  - **Middle Point** — the knob is configured for a 200 point range value (-100 to 100).
- d) Change the default parameters for your knob or slider as required.
  - **Name** — enter a new custom name for the control.
  - **Min** — the minimum value for the selected function. This is the value returned when the knob is at the counter-clockwise stop, or the slider it at the bottom stop.
  - **Max** — the maximum value for the selected function. This is the value returned when the knob is at the clockwise stop, or the slider it at the top stop.
  - **Sensitivity** — the number of points between the minimum value and the maximum value.
  - **Speed %** — 100% (other values not supported at this time)
  - **Invert** — invert the min and max stops of the knob or slider.
3. In the **Buttons** table, set up the buttons you want to use on the panel.
  - a) Locate the **ID** for the button you want to assign a function to. Refer to [Custom Mapping](#) on page 90 for a diagram to locate the buttons.
  - b) In the **Mapped OID** field, enter the OID for the function you want to assign to the button. Refer to [MIDI Device OID List](#) on page 141 for a list of OIDs.
  - c) Click the **Action** list and select the type of action for the button.
    - **OFF** — (not supported at this time)
    - **Stateless** — basic button functionality with no special state.
    - **GPI** — (not supported at this time)
    - **Set Value** — (not supported at this time)

- 
- **Toggle** — (not supported at this time)
  - **Increment** — (not supported at this time)
- d) Change the default parameters for your button as required.
- **Name** — enter a new custom name for the control.
  - **Value (Off)** — 0 (other values not supported at this time)
  - **Value (On)** — 1 (other values not supported at this time)
  - **Min** — 0 (other values not supported at this time)
  - **Max** — 1 (other values not supported at this time)
  - **Hold** — (not supported at this time)
4. Click the **Force Panel Refresh** list and select the how often DashBoard syncs with the panel.
  5. Click **Save**.
  6. Click **Save** again and select a file name and location for your custom controller file.
  7. Click **Save**.
  8. Click **Done**.

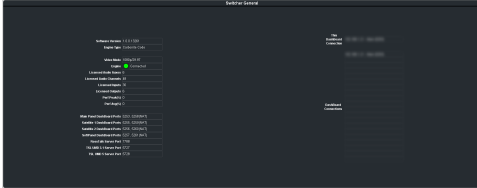


# Diagnostics

Switcher status menus and error conditions, installed options, calibration, diagnostics, and logs.

## Switcher Status

The status menu shows information for various components of the frame.



- **Software Version** — the current version of the software running on the switcher.
- **Engine Type** — the model of frame.
- **Video Mode** — the video format that the switcher is operating in.
- **Licensed Audio Auxes** — the number of audio aux layers that have been licensed.
- **Licensed Audio Channels** — the number of audio channels that have been licensed.
- **Licensed Inputs** — the number of video inputs that have been licensed.
- **Licensed Outputs** — the number of video outputs that have been licensed.
- **Perf Peak (%)** — the peak level reached on the system performance meter.
- **Perf Avg (%)** — the average level reached on the system performance meter.
- **Main Panel DashBoard Port** — the local and NAT network port that the switcher is listening on for the main panel.
- **Satellite 1 DashBoard Port** — the local and NAT network port that the switcher is listening on for the satellite 1 panel.
- **Satellite 2 DashBoard Port** — the local and NAT network port that the switcher is listening on for the satellite 2 panel.
- **SoftPanel DashBoard Port** — the local and NAT network port that the switcher is listening on for the SoftPanel.
- **RossTalk Server Port** — the network port that the switcher is listening on for RossTalk commands.

**Note:** You can disable RossTalk control from the **Global** page (Click **Navigation Menu** > **Configuration** > **System** > **Global**). Click **Disable for RossTalk**.

- **TSL UMD 3.1 Server Port** — the network port that the switcher is listening on for TSL 3.1 UMD commands.
- **TSL UMD 5 Server Port** — the network port that the switcher is listening on for TSL 5 UMD commands.
- **Allocated DVEs** — where DVE channels are allocated in the switcher.
- **This DashBoard Connection** — the IP address of the DashBoard system you are currently using to connect to the switcher. The text after the IP address indicates whether the connection is as Main, Satellite, or SoftPanel and the port being used.
- **DashBoard Connections** — the IP addresses of all the DashBoard connections to the switcher, including panels. The text after the IP address indicates whether the connection is as Main, Satellite, or SoftPanel and the port being used. Refer to [MultiPanel](#) on page 88 for more information.

**Note:** The switcher supports a maximum of 20 DashBoard connections at any one time. If there are already the maximum number of connections to a switcher you will not be able to connect to it.

- **Panel Connections** — The role, IP address, and model of all the physical panels connected to the switcher.

## Switcher Reset

If required, the switcher can be reset to return it to a user-defined default setting (RState). A reset can be performed for the entire switcher, or individual components, such as keys.

### Custom Reset Settings (RState)

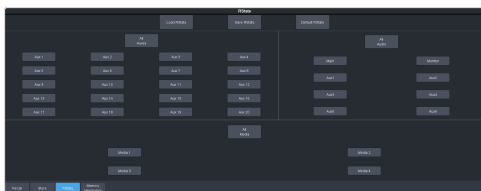
You can customize many of the default switcher parameters and save them as a user-defined reset settings. These custom reset settings can then be recalled when you want to return the switcher to a previous state.

#### To Save a Custom Reset Setting

The Custom Reset Setting, or RState, saves how you want the switcher to be configured when it powers up, or when you recall the RState manually.

1. Click **Navigation Menu** > **Live Assist** > **Memory** > **RState**.





2. Click **AuxX** and audio layers to select the buses and audio outputs that are reset with a switcher reset.

**Note:** If **Disable Audio Memories** is set to **On** (Click **Navigation Menu** > **Configuration** > **System** > **Global**) the audio memory attributes are disabled.

**Tip:** Click the **All** button to select or de-select all the items in that category.

3. Click **Save RState** and **Yes**.

### To Load a Custom Reset Setting (RState)

The Custom Reset Setting, or RState, is recalled every time the switcher is powered on, or it can be recalled manually.

1. Click **Navigation Menu** > **Live Assist** > **Memory** > **RState**.
2. Click **Load RState** and **Yes**.

**Tip:** Click **Default RState** to load the default RState settings.

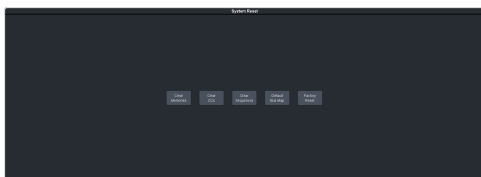
## Factory Default Settings

You can restore all or part of the switcher to the factory default state. A factory default returns all installation and personality settings are reset.

### To Factory Reset the Switcher

Return the switcher to the factory default settings.

1. Click **Navigation Menu** > **Configuration** > **System** > **Reset**.



2. Click a reset or clear button to return that feature to the factory default state.
  - **Clear Memories** — clear all memory registers on the switcher.
  - **Clear CCs** — clear all custom controls on the switcher.
  - **Default Bus Map** — return the bus map to the default mapping.

- **Factory Reset** — return the installation and personality registers to the default settings.

## Switcher Status Monitor

The switcher, and supporting systems, run as a services on the PC. These services can be started or stopped, depending on your needs, but are required for the switcher to operate.

The **Status Monitor** is located in the **Notification Area** and allows you to access the various services used by the switcher.

**Tip:** Right-click on the **Status Monitor** icon to open the Status Monitor.



- **Services** — Allows you to manually Stop, Start, or Restart a service or all services at once. The following services are used by the system.
  - Switcher
  - Panel
  - Webserver
  - FTPServer
  - OGPserver
  - CodeCore
- **Options**
  - **Startup With Windows** — Allows the switcher to start up when Windows® starts up. You can start the switcher manually using the **Carbonite Status Monitor** application.
  - **Use Default HTTP Port** — The system is set to allow access on the default port (5253 (5258 NAT)) when connecting to the switcher from DashBoard. If you disable the port you will not be able to connect to the switcher from DashBoard.
- **Close** — Close the Status Monitor. This shuts down the switcher. You can start the switcher manually using the **Carbonite Status Monitor** application.

## Specifications

Switcher resources and power rating.

The information in this section is subject to change without notice.

### Switcher Resources

The number of resources specific to your switcher depends on the options installed.

Resource	Carbonite Code
<b>Audio</b>	
Audio Mixer Faders	48
Mix Layers	7
<b>Video</b>	
2D DVE Channels	18
Chroma Keys per ME	4 (floating)
Custom Controls	256 (8 Banks × 32 CCs)
Keyers per ME	6
Matte Generators (total)	1
Media-Store CACHE	4 GB
Media-Store Channels (Max)	4
Memories per ME	100
MEs (Max)	3
MultiViewer Boxes	16 (32 with Shift)
MultiViewer Layouts	45
MultiViewer Outputs	3
Aux Buses	20
Video Inputs (max)	30
Video Outputs (max)	6

## Power Consumption

**Input Voltage** — 100 - 120V~, 220 - 240V~, 47-63Hz

Frame	Power		
	Min (Idle)	Avg	Max (Peak)
Carbonite Code	160W	240W	360W

## Video Input Specifications

Input Specification	Value
Video Inputs	NDI, NDI HX (H.264/AVC)

## Video Output Specifications

Output Specification	Value
Video Outputs	NDI, NDI HX (H.264/AVC)

# Custom Control Events

The Custom Control editor in DashBoard allows you to add or edit events in custom controls.

## Operations Custom Controls

### (BKGD DVE)

Event	Location	Description
BKGD DVE Size	Switcher > Bkgd DVE > Bkgd DVE Crop Param	Set the size of the background DVE for the selected . <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the Canvas that you want to perform the event on.</li><li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Size</b></li><li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set <b>(Absolute)</b> or reset <b>(Reset)</b> the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li><li>4. In the <b>Value (%)</b> field, enter the size you want to apply to the Background DVE.</li></ol>
BKGD DVE X-Position	Switcher > Bkgd DVE > Bkgd DVE Crop Param	Set the X-Position of the background DVE for the selected . <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the Canvas that you want to perform the event on.</li><li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>X-Position</b></li><li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set <b>(Absolute)</b> or reset <b>(Reset)</b> the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li><li>4. In the <b>Value (%)</b> field, enter the position on the X-axis you want to apply to the Background DVE.</li></ol>
BKGD DVE Y-Position	Switcher > Bkgd DVE > Bkgd DVE Crop Param	Set the Y-Position of the background DVE for the selected . <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the Canvas that you want to perform the event on.</li><li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Y-Position</b></li><li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set <b>(Absolute)</b> or reset <b>(Reset)</b> the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li><li>4. In the <b>Value (%)</b> field, enter the position on the Y-axis you want to apply to the Background DVE.</li></ol>
BKGD DVE Aspect	Switcher > Bkgd DVE > Bkgd DVE Crop Param	Set the aspect ratio of the background DVE for the selected . <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the Canvas that you want to perform the event on.</li><li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Aspect</b></li><li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set <b>(Absolute)</b> or reset <b>(Reset)</b> the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li><li>4. In the <b>Value (%)</b> field, enter the aspect ratio you want to apply to the Background DVE.</li></ol>
BKGD DVE Border Size	Switcher > Bkgd DVE > Bkgd DVE Crop Param	Set the size of the border of the background DVE for the selected . <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the Canvas that you want to perform the event on.</li><li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Edge Size</b></li><li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set <b>(Absolute)</b> or reset <b>(Reset)</b> the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li><li>4. In the <b>Value (%)</b> field, enter the size of the border you want to apply to the Background DVE. When a border is set to 0 the border is not visible.</li></ol>

Event	Location	Description
<b>BKGD DVE Edge Softness</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Bkgd DVE &gt; Bkgd DVE Crop Param</b>	<p>Set the softness of the edge of the background DVE for the selected .</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the Canvas that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Edge Softness</b></li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. In the <b>Value (%)</b> field, enter the amount of softness to apply to the edge of the Background DVE.</li> </ol>
<b>BKGD DVE Crop</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Bkgd DVE &gt; Bkgd DVE Crop Param</b>	<p>Set the amount of cropping you want to apply to each edge of the background DVE for the selected .</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the Canvas that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select the edge you want to crop.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. In the <b>Value (%)</b> field, enter the amount of cropping you want to apply to the selected edge of the Background DVE.</li> </ol>

## Custom Control Events

Event	Location	Description
<b>Cancel All CC</b>	<b>Custom Control &gt; Cancel All</b>	Stop all running custom controls.
<b>Cancel CC</b>	<b>Custom Control &gt; Cancel CC</b>	<p>Stop a particular custom control. The specific custom control is set when the cancel is inserted.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Bank</b> button and select the custom control bank you want to cancel a custom control on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>CC</b> button and select the custom control you want to cancel.</li> </ol>
<b>Hold CC</b>	<b>Custom Control &gt; Hold</b>	Insert a command in a custom control that will stop the custom control at the hold event. You must press the custom control button again, or use a GPI trigger, to continue the custom control.
<b>Loop CC</b>	<b>Custom Control &gt; Loop</b>	Have a custom control run continuously until stopped, or a Cancel/Cancel All custom control command is executed from another custom control.
<b>Pause CC</b>	<b>Custom Control &gt; Hold</b>	<p>Insert a command in a custom control that will stop a custom control at the pause event. The length of the pause is set when the pause is inserted.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter the length of the pause in the <b>Pause (fr)</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>Play CC</b>	<b>Custom Control &gt; Play CC</b>	<p>Play a custom control. <b>Note:</b> The Play CC command applies to a target custom control button only. If you move the contents of the custom control from the button selected in the Play CC to another button, the Play CC command will not follow and will continue to play the custom control assigned to the original button.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Bank</b> button and select the custom control bank you want to play a custom control on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>CC</b> button and select the custom control you want to play.</li> </ol>
<b>Resume CC</b>	<b>Custom Control &gt; Resume CC</b>	<p>Resume a particular custom control that is at a hold. The specific custom control is set when the resume is inserted. If the target custom control is not at a hold event, the resume command will not start the target custom control.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Bank</b> button and select the custom control bank you want to resume a custom control on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>CC</b> button and select the custom control you want to resume.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
<b>Resume All CCs</b>	<b>Custom Control &gt; Resume All</b>	Resume all custom control that are at hold. The specific custom control is set when the resume is inserted. If a custom control is not at a hold event, the resume command will not start the a custom control.
<b>State, Insert</b>	<b>Custom Control &gt; State</b>	<p>Embed the state of the switcher into a custom control. A state in a custom control behaves just like a memory.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click <b>State Attributes</b> and select the inclusions and attributes that you want to include in the state of the switcher when it is stored to the custom control. If <b>Disable Audio Memories</b> is set to <b>On</b> (Click <b>Navigation Menu &gt; Configuration &gt; System &gt; Global</b>) the audio attributes are disabled.</li> </ol>

## Keyer

Event	Location	Description
<b>Key Only Transition</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Keyer &gt; Keyer Trans</b>	<p>Perform a key only transition for the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>Click the <b>Action</b> button and select the type of transition to perform. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Cut</b> — cut transition</li> <li><b>Auto</b> — auto transition</li> <li><b>Reset Rate</b> — reset the transition rate to default</li> <li><b>Cut On</b> — cut the key on-air</li> <li><b>Cut Off</b> — cut the key off-air</li> <li><b>Auto Trans On</b> — auto transition the key on-air</li> <li><b>Auto Trans Off</b> — auto transition the key off-air</li> </ul> </li> </ol>
<b>Key Trans Rate</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Keyer &gt; Keyer Trans Rate</b>	<p>Set or reset the keyer transition rate of the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>Enter a new transition rate, in frames, for the key in the <b>Value (fr)</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>DVE Key Aspect</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Keyer &gt; DVE Param</b>	<p>Select the aspect ratio for the DVE key on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Aspect</b>.</li> <li>Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>Enter an aspect ratio in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
<b>DVE Key Border Color (HSL)</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Keyer &gt; DVE Border Color (HSL)</b>	<p>Select the custom color you want to apply to the border of the DVE key of the selected area. Each component of the HSL color must be inserted individually.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Component</b> button and select the HSL component you want to assign a value to. A value should be applied to all three components.</li> <li>5. Enter a value for the selected component in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>DVE Key Border Color (Preset)</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Keyer &gt; DVE Border Color (Preset)</b>	<p>Select the preset color you want to apply to the border of the DVE key of the selected key for the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Color</b> button and select the preset color you want to apply to the border.</li> </ol>
<b>DVE Key Border</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Keyer &gt; DVE Param</b>	<p>Select the size of border for the DVE key on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Edge Size</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter a size for the border in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>DVE Key Crop (Bottom Edge)</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Keyer &gt; DVE Param</b>	<p>Select the amount of cropping on the bottom edge of the DVE key on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Bottom Edge</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter the amount of cropping in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>DVE Key Crop (Dual Edge)</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Keyer &gt; DVE Crop Param</b>	<p>Select the amount of cropping on both horizontal or vertical edges of the DVE key of the selected key for the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select the edges you want to crop.</li> <li>5. Enter the amount of Left or Top cropping you want to apply in the <b>Value %</b> field.</li> <li>6. Enter the amount of Right or Bottom cropping you want to apply in the <b>Other Value %</b> field.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
<b>DVE Key Crop (Left Edge)</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Keyer &gt; DVE Param</b>	<p>Select the amount of cropping on the left edge of the DVE key on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Left Edge</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set <b>(Absolute)</b> or reset <b>(Reset)</b> the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter the amount of cropping in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>DVE Key Crop (Right Edge)</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Keyer &gt; DVE Param</b>	<p>Select the amount of cropping on the right edge of the DVE key on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Right Edge</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set <b>(Absolute)</b> or reset <b>(Reset)</b> the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter the amount of cropping in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>DVE Key Crop (Top Edge)</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Keyer &gt; DVE Param</b>	<p>Select the amount of cropping on the top edge of the DVE key on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Top Edge</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set <b>(Absolute)</b> or reset <b>(Reset)</b> the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter the amount of cropping in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>DVE Key Edge Softness</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Keyer &gt; DVE Param</b>	<p>Select the amount of softness to apply to the edge of the DVE key on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Edge Softness</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set <b>(Absolute)</b> or reset <b>(Reset)</b> the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter an amount of softness for the DVE key or border in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>DVE Key Size</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Keyer &gt; DVE Param</b>	<p>Select the size of the DVE key on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Size</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set <b>(Absolute)</b> or reset <b>(Reset)</b> the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter a new size in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>



Event	Location	Description
DVE Key X-Position	Switcher > Keyer > DVE Param	<p>Select the x-axis position of the DVE key on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>X-Pos</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter a new position in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
DVE Key Y-Position	Switcher > Keyer > DVE Param	<p>Select the y-axis position for the DVE key on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Y-Pos</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter a new position in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
Fly Key (DVE)	Switcher > Keyer > Keyer Fly	<p>Assign DVE resources (Fly) to the selected key for the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Value</b> button and select whether DVE resources are assigned to the key (<b>On</b>) or not (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>
Key, Make Linear	Switcher > Keyer > Keyer Make Linear	<p>Make the selected key linear on the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to make linear.</li> </ol>
Key Active	Switcher > Keyer > Keyer Active	<p>Transition a key (or include it in the next transition) on or off-air for the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select a cut (<b>Cut Key</b>) or auto transition (<b>Trans Key</b>) for the key, or have to key included in the next transition (<b>Include Key</b>).</li> <li>5. Click the <b>Value</b> button to select whether the key is transitioned on-air / included in the next transition to go on-air (<b>On</b>) or off-air / included in the next transition to go off-air (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>
Key Copy	Switcher > Keyer > Keyer Copy	<p>Copy the contents of one key to another key the same or a different area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Target ME</b> button and select where you want to copy the key to.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Target Keyer</b> button for the key you want to copy to.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Source ME</b> button and select where you want to copy the key from.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Source Keyer</b> button for the key you want to copy from.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
Key Invert	Switcher > Keyer > Keyer Invert	<p>Turn the key invert feature on or off for the selected key for the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to reverse the polarity of the key alpha so that the holes in the background are cut by dark areas of the key alpha instead of bright areas.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Click a <b>Value</b> button to turn key invert on (<b>On</b>) or off (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>
Key Mode	Switcher > Keyer > Keyer Mode	<p>Select the mode for the selected key for the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click a <b>Mode</b> button to have the key set as shaped/unshaped from the key (<b>Normal</b>), as additive for a shaped source (<b>Additive</b>), or alpha to fully opaque/white (<b>Full</b>).</li> </ol>
Key Reset	Switcher > Keyer > Keyer Reset Params	<p>Reset the parameters for the selected key for the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to reset the clip, gain, transparency, invert, and mask for.</li> </ol>
Key Settings (Clip, Gain, Transparency)	Switcher > Keyer > Keyer Settings	<p>Select clip, gain, and transparency settings for the selected key for the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter a value for the clip, gain, or transparency for the key in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> </ol>
Key Swap	Switcher > Keyer > Keyer Swap	<p>Swap the contents of one key with another key the same or a different area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>1st ME</b> button and select where the first key you want to swap is.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>1st Keyer</b> button for the first key you want to swap.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>2nd ME</b> button and select where the second key you want to swap is.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>2nd Keyer</b> button for the second key you want to swap.</li> </ol>
Key Type	Switcher > Keyer > Keyer Type	<p>Assign a key type for a key for the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click a <b>Type</b> button to assign the key type to the selected key.</li> </ol>
Mask, Force	Switcher > Keyer > Mask Force	<p>Apply a mask to the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Value</b> button and select whether to force the area inside the mask region to the foreground (<b>On</b>) or not (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
Mask, Invert	Switcher > Keyer > Mask Invert	<p>Invert the mask of the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Value</b> button and select whether to invert the masked area with the unmasked area (<b>On</b>) or not (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>
Mask (Box) — Bottom Edge Position	Switcher > Keyer > Box Mask Param	<p>Select the position for the bottom edge of the box mask on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Bottom Edge</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter a new position in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
Mask (Box) — Edge Softness	Switcher > Keyer > Box Mask Param	<p>Select the amount of softness to apply to the edges of the box mask on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Edge Softness</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter a new softness amount in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
Mask (Box) — Left Edge Position	Switcher > Keyer > Box Mask Param	<p>Select the position for the left edge of the box mask on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Left Edge</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter a new position in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
Mask (Box) — Right Edge Position	Switcher > Keyer > Box Mask Param	<p>Select the position for the right edge of the box mask on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Right Edge</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter a new position in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
Mask (Box) — Size	Switcher > Keyer > Box Mask Param	<p>Select the size of the box mask on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Size</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter a new size in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
<b>Mask (Box) — Top Edge Position</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Keyer &gt; Box Mask Param</b>	<p>Select the position for the top edge of the box mask on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Top Edge</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter a new position in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>Mask (Box) — X-Position</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Keyer &gt; Box Mask Param</b>	<p>Select the x-axis position of the box mask on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>X-Pos</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter a new position in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>Mask (Box) — Y-Position</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Keyer &gt; Box Mask Param</b>	<p>Select the y-axis position for the box mask on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Y-Pos</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter a new position in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>Mask (Pattern) — Aspect Ratio</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Keyer &gt; Pattern Mask Param</b>	<p>Select the aspect ratio for the pattern mask for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Aspect</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter an aspect ratio in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>Mask (Pattern) — Border Size</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Keyer &gt; Pattern Mask Param</b>	<p>Select the size of border for the pattern mask on the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Border Size</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter a size for the border in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>Mask (Pattern) — Edge Softness</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Keyer &gt; Pattern Mask Param</b>	<p>Select the amount of softness to apply to the edge of the mask for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Softness</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter an amount of softness for the pattern or border in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
Mask (Pattern) — Horizontal Multiplication	Switcher > Keyer > Pattern Mask Param	<p>Select the number of times you want to multiply the pattern mask horizontally for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Horizontal Mult.</b></li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter the number of times the pattern is multiplied in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> </ol>
Mask (Pattern) — Reset	Switcher > Keyer > Pattern Mask Reset	<p>Reset the mask for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Reset Params.</b></li> </ol>
Mask (Pattern) — Rotation	Switcher > Keyer > Pattern Mask Param	<p>Select the rotation for the pattern mask for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Rotation.</b></li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter a rotation in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
Mask (Pattern) — Size	Switcher > Keyer > Pattern Mask Param	<p>Select the size of the pattern mask for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Size.</b></li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter a new size in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
Mask (Pattern) — Vertical Multiplication	Switcher > Keyer > Pattern Mask Param	<p>Select the number of times you want to multiply the pattern mask vertically for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Vertical Mult.</b></li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter the number of times the pattern is multiplied in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> </ol>
Mask (Pattern) — X-Position	Switcher > Keyer > Pattern Mask Param	<p>Select the x-axis position of the pattern mask for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>X-Pos.</b></li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter a new position in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
Mask (Pattern) — Y-Position	Switcher > Keyer > Pattern Mask Param	<p>Select the y-axis position for the pattern mask for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Y-Pos.</b></li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter a new position in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
<b>Mask</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Keyer &gt; Mask Type</b>	<p>Apply a mask to the selected key for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Keyer</b> button for the key you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click a <b>Mask Type</b> button to apply a pattern mask (<b>Pattern</b>), box mask (<b>Box</b>, or turn the mask off (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>

## Media-Store

Event	Location	Description
<b>Auto Play</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Media-Store &gt; Attributes</b>	<p>Select whether an animation plays automatically when taken on-air for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>MediaStore Channel</b> button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Auto Play</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Value</b> button and select whether the animation plays automatically (<b>On</b>) or not (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>
<b>Capture Alpha</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Media-Store &gt; Capture Alpha</b>	<p>Select whether to include the alpha with a capture on the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>MediaStore Channel</b> button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Capture Alpha</b> button and select whether the alpha is captured with the source (<b>Yes</b>) or not (<b>No</b>).</li> </ol>
<b>Capture Alpha Source</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Media-Store &gt; Capture Alpha Source</b>	<p>Select the alpha source you want to capture for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>MediaStore Channel</b> button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Source</b> and select the alpha source that you want to capture.</li> </ol>
<b>Capture</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Media-Store &gt; Capture</b>	<p>Capture a still to the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>MediaStore Channel</b> button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click a <b>Capture Type</b> button to select whether the Media-Store captures the media to a file name (<b>Capture</b>) or the next available capture number (<b>Capture+</b>).</li> <li>3. If you selected <b>Capture</b>, enter the name you want use for the capture file in the <b>Capture File Name</b> field. If a file with the same name exists it will be overwritten.</li> </ol>
<b>Capture Mode</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Media-Store &gt; Capture Display</b>	<p>Select the capture mode for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>MediaStore Channel</b> button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click a <b>Capture Display</b> button to select whether the capture is in electronic-to-electronic "E/E" (<b>End to End</b>) or playback "P/B" (<b>Playback</b>) mode.</li> </ol>
<b>Capture Source</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Media-Store &gt; Capture Source</b>	<p>Select the video source you want to capture for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>MediaStore Channel</b> button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Source</b> and select the video source that you want to capture.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
<b>Clear Channel</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Media-Store &gt; Channel Action</b>	<p>Clear the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>MediaStore Channel</b> button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Clear Channel</b>.</li> </ol>
<b>Cut Frame</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Media-Store &gt; Attributes</b>	<p>Select the point, in frames, from the start of the media item that the MediaWipe background cut occurs for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>MediaStore Channel</b> button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Cut Frame</b>.</li> <li>4. Enter the frame in the media item that you want to cut to occur for the MediaWipe in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>Delete Capture</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Media-Store &gt; Delete Media Capture</b>	<p>Delete a captured still.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter the number of the capture file you want to delete in the <b>Capture File</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>Media-Store Load</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Media-Store &gt; Load</b>	<p>Load a media item into the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>MediaStore Channel</b> button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Location</b> button to select whether the media item you want to load is located on the internal storage (<b>Internal</b>) or on the USB (<b>USB</b>).</li> <li>3. Enter the number of the media item you want to load in the <b>Media Number</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>Looping</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Media-Store &gt; Attributes</b>	<p>Select whether an animation will loop at the end for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>MediaStore Channel</b> button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Looping</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Value</b> button and select whether the animation loops at the end (<b>On</b>) or not (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>
<b>Move To Frame</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Media-Store &gt; Attributes</b>	<p>Move to a specific frame in the media item for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>MediaStore Channel</b> button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Move To Frame</b>.</li> <li>4. Enter the frame that you want to jump to in the media item in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> </ol>



Event	Location	Description
Mute	Switcher > Media-Store > Attributes	<p>Select whether the associated audio is turned on or off during playback for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>MediaStore Channel</b> button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Mute</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Value</b> button and select whether the audio plays (<b>On</b>) or not (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>
Play	Switcher > Media-Store > Channel Action	<p>Start an animation playing for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>MediaStore Channel</b> button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Toggle Play</b>.</li> </ol>
Play Speed	Switcher > Media-Store > Playback Speed	<p>Select the speed for an animation to play at on the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>MediaStore Channel</b> button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Playback Speed</b>.</li> <li>4. Enter the speed, faster or slower than 100%, that you want the animation to play at in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
Reset Media	Switcher > Media-Store > Channel Action	<p>Reset the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>MediaStore Channel</b> button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Reset Media</b>.</li> </ol>
Reverse	Switcher > Media-Store > Attributes	<p>Select whether an animation plays in reverse for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>MediaStore Channel</b> button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Reverse</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Value</b> button and select whether the animation plays in reverse (<b>On</b>) or not (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>
Rewind	Switcher > Media-Store > Channel Action	<p>Rewind an animation to the first frame for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>MediaStore Channel</b> button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Move to Frame 1</b>.</li> </ol>
Shaped	Switcher > Media-Store > Attributes	<p>Select whether the alpha of the media item should be shaped or unshaped for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>MediaStore Channel</b> button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Shaped</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Value</b> button and select whether the alpha of the media item is shaped (<b>On</b>) or not (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
<b>Thumb Frame</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Media-Store &gt; Attributes</b>	<p>Select the point, in frames, from the start of the animation that is used as the thumbnail for the media item.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>MediaStore Channel</b> button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Thumb Frame</b>.</li> <li>4. Enter the frame in the media item that you want to use as the thumbnail.</li> </ol>
<b>X-Position</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Media-Store &gt; Attributes</b>	<p>Select the x-axis position for the media item for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>MediaStore Channel</b> button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>X-Pos</b>.</li> <li>4. Enter a new position in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>Y-Position</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Media-Store &gt; Attributes</b>	<p>Select the y-axis position for the media item for the selected Media-Store channel.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>MediaStore Channel</b> button for the Media-Store channel you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Y-Pos</b>.</li> <li>4. Enter a new position in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> </ol>

## Matte

Event	Location	Description
<b>Matte Color, Reset</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Matte &gt; Matte Color Reset</b>	<p>Reset the matte color for the selected ME or aux.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME/Matte</b> button for the ME or aux that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. For an ME, click the <b>Matte</b> button and select <b>Matte</b>.</li> </ol>
<b>Matte Color (HSL)</b>	<b>&gt;Switcher &gt; Matte &gt; Matte Color (HSL)</b>	<p>Select the custom matte color for the selected ME or aux. Each component of the HSL color must be inserted individually.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME/Matte</b> button for the ME or aux that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Matte</b> button and select <b>Matte</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Component</b> button and select the HSL component you want to assign a value to. A value should be applied to all three components.</li> <li>5. Enter a value for the selected component in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>Matte Color (Preset)</b>	<b>&gt;Switcher &gt; Matte &gt; Matte Color (Preset)</b>	<p>Select a preset matte color for the selected ME or aux.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Matte</b> button and select <b>Matte</b>.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Color</b> button and select the color you want to use.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
Wash Color (HSL)	>Switcher > Matte > Wash Color (HSL)	<p>Select the custom matte color for the selected ME or aux. Each component of the HSL color must be inserted individually. This is the second color of the wash, the first color is set from the matte color.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Matte</b> button and select <b>Wash</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Component</b> button and select the HSL component you want to assign a value to. A value should be applied to all three components.</li> <li>5. Enter a value for the selected component in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
Wash Color (Preset)	>Switcher > Matte > Wash Color (Preset)	<p>Select a preset wash color for the selected ME. This is the second color of the wash, the first color is set from the matte color.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Matte</b> button and select <b>Wash</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Color</b> button and select the color you want to use.</li> </ol>
Wash Color Reset	>Switcher > Matte > Wash Color Reset	<p>Reset the matte color for the selected ME. This is the second color of the wash, the first color is set from the matte color.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Matte</b> button and select <b>Wash</b>.</li> </ol>
Wash Generator — Disable	>Switcher > Matte > Wash Enabled Reset	<p>Disable the wash generator for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> </ol>
Wash Generator — Enable	>Switcher > Matte > Wash Enabled	<p>Enable the wash generator for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Wash</b> button and select whether the wash generator is enabled (<b>On</b>) or not (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>

## Sequencer

Event	Location	Description
Load	Sequencer > Load	<p>Load a sequence into the selected Sequencer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Sequencer</b> button and select the Sequencer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>3. In the <b>Value</b> field, enter the sequence number for the sequence you want to load in the selected Sequencer.</li> </ol>
Reload	Sequencer > Reload	<p>Reload the sequence currently loaded into the selected Sequencer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Sequencer</b> button and select the Sequencer you want to perform the event on.</li> </ol>
Clear	Sequencer > Clear	<p>Unload the sequence currently loaded into the selected Sequencer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Sequencer</b> button and select the Sequencer you want to perform the event on.</li> </ol>
Next	Sequencer > Next	<p>Run the next event in the selected Sequencer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Sequencer</b> button and select the Sequencer you want to perform the event on.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
<b>Up</b>	<b>Sequencer &gt; Up</b>	Move the next event highlight (green) up one event in the sequence loaded into the selected Sequencer. 1. Click the <b>Sequencer</b> button and select the Sequencer you want to perform the event on.
<b>Down</b>	<b>Sequencer &gt; Down</b>	Move the next event highlight (green) down one event in the sequence loaded into the selected Sequencer. 1. Click the <b>Sequencer</b> button and select the Sequencer you want to perform the event on.
<b>Link</b>	<b>Sequencer &gt; Link</b>	Turn Link on or off for the selected Sequencer. 1. Click the <b>Sequencer</b> button and select the Sequencer you want to perform the event on. 2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set ( <b>Absolute</b> ) or reset ( <b>Reset</b> ) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. Click a <b>Value</b> button to turn link <b>On</b> or <b>Off</b> .

## Special

Event	Location	Description
<b>Row ME Assignment</b>	<b>Special &gt; Row ME Assignment</b>	Assign a control panel row to an ME, MiniME™, or on a particular panel. 1. Click the <b>Panel</b> button for the control panel that you want to assign a row from. 2. Click the <b>Row</b> button for the row on the control panel that you want to assign to an ME. 3. Click the <b>ME</b> button as select the area that you want to assign the control panel row to.

## Switcher Operation

Event	Location	Description
<b>Bus Source Copy</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Bus Source Copy</b>	Copy the contents of one bus to another. 1. Click the <b>Source ME</b> button and select the location containing the bus you want to copy from. 2. Click the <b>Source Bus/Keyer</b> button and select the bus that you want to copy. 3. Click the <b>Destination ME</b> button and select the location containing the bus you want to copy to. 4. Click the <b>Dest. Bus/Keyer</b> button and select the bus that you want to copy to.
<b>Bus Source Select</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Bus Source</b>	Select a source on the selected bus for the selected area. 1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to select a bus on. 2. Click the <b>Bus/Keyer</b> button and select the bus that you want to select a source on. 3. If you selected a key bus, click a <b>Bus</b> button to select whether you are selecting a source for the fill ( <b>Video</b> ) or the alpha ( <b>Alpha</b> ) of the key. 4. Click the <b>Source</b> button and select the source that you want on the selected bus.

Event	Location	Description
ME Copy	Switcher > ME Copy	Copy the contents of one area to another. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Target ME</b> button and select the location that you want to copy to.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Source ME</b> button and select the location that you want to copy from.</li> </ol>
Memory Recall	Switcher > Memory Recall	Recall a memory for the selected area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Include</b> button and select all the locations that you want to perform the memory recall on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Bank</b> button and select the bank that you want to recall the memory on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Memory</b> button and select the memory that you want to recall.</li> </ol>
RState, Load	Switcher > Load RState	Load the custom reset settings for the selected area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Include</b> button and select all the locations that you want to recall the custom reset settings on.</li> </ol>
Memory Recall	Switcher > Memory Recall	Recall a memory for the selected area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Include</b> button and select all the locations that you want to perform the memory recall on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Bank</b> button and select the bank that you want to recall the memory on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Memory</b> button and select the memory that you want to recall.</li> </ol>

## Transitions

Event	Location	Description
<b>Combined Transition Event</b>		
Transition Action - Dissolve	Switcher > Transition > Transition Action	Set up a dissolve transition with a single custom control event. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Dissolve</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Toggle</b>, <b>Include On</b>, and <b>Include Off</b> buttons to set up what is included with the next transition. Something must always be selected for the toggle inclusion. Key toggle and on/off inclusions are mutually exclusive. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Toggle</b> — select the background and any keys that you want included with the transition. This is the same as using the next trans buttons on the Transition area of a control panel.</li> <li>• <b>Include On</b> — select that keys that you want to transition on-air with the next transition. If a key is already on-air it is ignored.</li> <li>• <b>Include Off</b> — select that keys that you want to transition off-air with the next transition. If a key is already off-air it is ignored.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. Click an <b>Auto Trans</b> button to select whether the transition is performed with the custom control (<b>On</b>) or if the custom control only sets up the next transition but does not perform it (<b>Off</b>).</li> <li>5. Enter a rate for transition in the <b>Trans Rate (fr)</b> field. A rate of 0 is performed as a cut.</li> <li>6. Click a <b>Diss/Flash</b> button to select whether the transition is performed as a dissolve (<b>Dissolve</b>) or a WhiteFlash (<b>Flash</b>). The existing onset, offset, and color values for the ME are used for the WhiteFlash.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
Transition Action - Wipe	Switcher > Transition > Transition Action	<p>Set up a wipe transition with a single custom control event.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Wipe</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Toggle</b>, <b>Include On</b>, and <b>Include Off</b> buttons to set up what is included with the next transition. Something must always be selected for the toggle inclusion. Key toggle and on/off inclusions are mutually exclusive. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Toggle</b> — select the background and any keys that you want included with the transition. This is the same as using the next trans buttons on the Transition area of a control panel.</li> <li>• <b>Include On</b> — select that keys that you want to transition on-air with the next transition. If a key is already on-air it is ignored.</li> <li>• <b>Include Off</b> — select that keys that you want to transition off-air with the next transition. If a key is already off-air it is ignored.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. Click an <b>Auto Trans</b> button to select whether the transition is performed with the custom control (<b>On</b>) or if the custom control only sets up the next transition but does not perform it (<b>Off</b>).</li> <li>5. Enter a rate for transition in the <b>Trans Rate (fr)</b> field. A rate of 0 is performed as a cut.</li> <li>6. Click the <b>Pattern</b> button and select the wipe pattern you want to use for the transition.</li> </ol>
Transition Action - DVE	Switcher > Transition > Transition Action	<p>Set up a DVE wipe transition with a single custom control event.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click <b>DVE</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Toggle</b>, <b>Include On</b>, and <b>Include Off</b> buttons to set up what is included with the next transition. Something must always be selected for the toggle inclusion. Key toggle and on/off inclusions are mutually exclusive. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Toggle</b> — select the background and any keys that you want included with the transition. This is the same as using the next trans buttons on the Transition area of a control panel.</li> <li>• <b>Include On</b> — select that keys that you want to transition on-air with the next transition. If a key is already on-air it is ignored.</li> <li>• <b>Include Off</b> — select that keys that you want to transition off-air with the next transition. If a key is already off-air it is ignored.</li> </ul> </li> <li>4. Click an <b>Auto Trans</b> button to select whether the transition is performed with the custom control (<b>On</b>) or if the custom control only sets up the next transition but does not perform it (<b>Off</b>).</li> <li>5. Enter a rate for transition in the <b>Trans Rate (fr)</b> field. A rate of 0 is performed as a cut.</li> <li>6. Click the <b>DVE Effect</b> button and select the DVE wipe pattern you want to use for the transition.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
Transition Action - MediaWipe	Switcher > Transition > Transition Action	<p>Set up a MediaWipe transition with a single custom control event.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>Click <b>MediaWipe</b>.</li> <li>Click the <b>Toggle</b>, <b>Include On</b>, and <b>Include Off</b> buttons to set up what is included with the next transition. Something must always be selected for the toggle inclusion. Key toggle and on/off inclusions are mutually exclusive. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Toggle</b> — select the background and any keys that you want included with the transition. This is the same as using the next trans buttons on the Transition area of a control panel.</li> <li><b>Include On</b> — select that keys that you want to transition on-air with the next transition. If a key is already on-air it is ignored.</li> <li><b>Include Off</b> — select that keys that you want to transition off-air with the next transition. If a key is already off-air it is ignored.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Click an <b>Auto Trans</b> button to select whether the transition is performed with the custom control (<b>On</b>) or if the custom control only sets up the next transition but does not perform it (<b>Off</b>).</li> <li>Click the <b>Layer</b> button to select what the MediaWipe animation covers.</li> <li>Click a <b>Location</b> button for the drive that the animation to use for the MediaWipe is stored on.</li> <li>Enter the media number for the animation you want use for the MediaWipe in the <b>Media Number</b> field.</li> <li>Click a <b>Channel</b> number to select the Media-Store channel you want to use for the MediaWipe.</li> </ol>
<b>Individual Transition Events</b>		
Auto Trans	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Action	<p>Performs an auto transition on the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>Click the <b>Action</b> button and select <b>Auto Trans</b>.</li> </ol>
Cut	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Action	<p>Performs a cut on the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>Click the <b>Action</b> button and select <b>Cut</b>.</li> </ol>
DVE Wipe, Reset	Switcher > Transition > DVE Wipe Reset	<p>Reset the parameters or direction and flip-flop for the DVE wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>Click <b>Reset</b> to reset the DVE wipe parameters.</li> </ol>
DVE Wipe Direction (Flip-Flop)	Switcher > Transition > DVE Wipe Direction	<p>Select whether the DVE wipe reverses direction for every second transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>Click <b>Flip-Flop</b>.</li> <li>Click <b>On</b> or <b>Off</b> to select whether Flip-Flop is on (<b>On</b>) or not (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>



Event	Location	Description
DVE Wipe Direction	Switcher > Transition > DVE Wipe Direction	<p>Select the direction for the DVE wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>3. Click <b>Direction</b>.</li> <li>4. Click <b>Forward</b> or <b>Reverse</b> to select whether the DVE wipe moves in a forward (<b>Forward</b>) or reverse (<b>Reverse</b>) direction.</li> </ol>
DVE Wipe Pattern	Switcher > Transition > DVE Wipe Effect	<p>Select the pattern you want to use for a DVE wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Effect</b> button and select the pattern you want to use for the DVE wipe.</li> </ol>
MediaWipe — Channel	Switcher > Transition > Media Wipe Channel	<p>Select which Media-Store channel will be used for the MediaWipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click <b>M1</b> or <b>M2</b> to assign that Media-Store channel to the MediaWipe.</li> </ol>
MediaWipe Cut Point, Set	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Action	<p>Sets the cut point for a MediaWipe transition for the selected area. You must select the point in the transition that you want to place the cut before running this event.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Action</b> button and select <b>Set Media Cut</b>.</li> </ol>
MediaWipe — Direction, Flip-Flop	Switcher > Transition > DVE Wipe Direction	<p>Select whether the MediaWipe reverses direction for every second transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>3. Click <b>Flip-Flop</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Value</b> button and select whether Flip-Flop is on (<b>On</b>) or not (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>
MediaWipe — Direction	Switcher > Transition > DVE Wipe Direction	<p>Select the direction for the MediaWipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>3. Click <b>Direction</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Value</b> button and select whether the MediaWipe moves in a forward (<b>Forward</b>) or reverse (<b>Reverse</b>) direction.</li> </ol>
MediaWipe — Layer	Switcher > Transition > ME Media Trans Layer	<p>Select which Media-Store channel will be used for the MediaWipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Layer</b> button to select what the MediaWipe animation covers.</li> </ol>
MediaWipe Trans End Point, Set	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Action	<p>Sets the ending point for a MediaWipe transition for the selected area. Use the fader to move through the animation to the point you want to end the transition and run this CC to save that point.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Action</b> button and select <b>Set Media Trans End</b>.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
MediaWipe Trans Start Point, Set	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Action	<p>Sets the starting point for a MediaWipe transition for the selected area. Use the fader to move through the animation to the point you want to start the transition and run this CC to save that point.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Action</b> button and select <b>Set Media Trans Start</b>.</li> </ol>
MediaWipe Trans Thumbnail	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Action	<p>Sets the starting point for a MediaWipe transition for the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Action</b> button and select <b>Set Media Thumb</b>.</li> </ol>
ME Dissolve Type	Switcher > Transition > ME Dissolve Type	<p>Select the type of dissolve transition (WhiteFlash or Dissolve) you want to use.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click a <b>Type</b> button to select a Dissolve (<b>Dissolve</b>) or WhiteFlash (<b>Flash</b>) transition.</li> </ol>
ME Trans Rate	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Parameter	<p>Set or reset the background transition rate of the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>ME Trans Rate</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter a new transition rate, in frames, in the <b>Value (fr)</b> field.</li> </ol>
ME Trans Type	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Type	<p>Select the transition type for a background transition of the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Type</b> button for the type of transition you want to use.</li> </ol>
ME WhiteFlash Color	Switcher > Transition > ME Flash Dissolve Color (Preset)	<p>Select color for the WhiteFlash transition.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Color</b> button and select the preset color you want to use.</li> </ol>
ME WhiteFlash Offset	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Value	<p>Select time for the offset of the WhiteFlash transition.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Flash Offset</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter a new offset position in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
ME WhiteFlash Onset	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Value	<p>Select time for the onset of the WhiteFlash transition.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Flash Onset</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter a new onset position in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
Reset	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Action	<p>Resets the transition area of the selected area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Action</b> button and select <b>Reset</b>.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
Roll Clip	Switcher > Transition > Roll Clip	Turn the Roll Clip feature on or off for the selected area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>Click the <b>Value</b> button and select whether roll clip is on (<b>On</b>) or not (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>
Trans Clear	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Action	Configures the next transition area of the selected area to take all keys off-air with the next transition. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>Click the <b>Action</b> button and select <b>Trans Clear</b>.</li> </ol>
Trans Delay	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Action	Applies the pre-delay to the transition. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>Click the <b>Action</b> button and select <b>Delayed Auto Trans</b>.</li> </ol>
Trans Elements	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Element	Select the elements to be included in the next transition of the selected area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>Click the <b>Elements</b> button and select background and/or the keys that you want to include in the next transition.</li> </ol>
Trans Limit — On/Off	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Limit	Turn the transition limit feature on or off for the selected area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>Click the <b>Value</b> button and select whether trans limit is on (<b>On</b>) or not (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>
Trans Limit — Reset	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Action	Resets the transition limit point of the selected area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>Click the <b>Action</b> button and select <b>Reset Limit</b>.</li> </ol>
Trans Limit — Set	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Action	Sets the transition limit point of the selected area. You must select the point in the transition that you want to place the limit before running this event. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>Click the <b>Action</b> button and select <b>Set Limit</b>.</li> </ol>
Trans Limit — Value	Switcher > Transition > ME Trans Value	Select the limit point for the trans limit of the selected area. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>Click <b>Trans Limit</b>.</li> <li>Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>Enter the point in the transition that you want to place the trans limit in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
Wipe Direction (Flip-Flop)	Switcher > Transition > Wipe Direction	<p>Select whether the wipe reverses direction for every second transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Pattern</b> button and select <b>Wipe</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Flip-Flip</b>.</li> <li>5. Click the <b>Value</b> button and select whether Flip-Flop is on (<b>On</b>) or off (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>
Wipe Direction	Switcher > Transition > Wipe Direction	<p>Select the direction for the wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Pattern</b> button and select <b>Wipe</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Direction</b>.</li> <li>5. Click the <b>Value</b> button and select whether the wipe moves in a forward (<b>Forward</b>) or reverse (<b>Reverse</b>) direction.</li> </ol>
Wipe Pattern — Aspect Ratio	Switcher > Transition > Wipe Param	<p>Select the aspect ratio for the wipe pattern you want to use for a wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Aspect</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter an aspect ratio in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
Wipe Pattern — Border Color (HSL)	Switcher > Transition > Wipe Border Color (HSL)	<p>Select the custom color you want to apply to the border of the pattern for the wipe transition of the selected ME. Each component of the HSL color must be inserted individually.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Matte</b> button and select <b>Wipe Border</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Component</b> button and select the HSL component you want to assign a value to. A value should be applied to all three components.</li> <li>5. Enter a value for the selected component in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
Wipe Pattern — Border Color (Preset)	Switcher > Transition > Wipe Border Color (Preset)	<p>Select the preset color you want to apply to the border of the pattern for the wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Matte</b> button and select <b>Wipe Border</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Color</b> button and select the preset color you want to apply to the border.</li> </ol>
Wipe Pattern — Border Size	Switcher > Transition > Wipe Param	<p>Select the size of border for the wipe pattern you want to use for a wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Border Size</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter a size for the border in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
<b>Wipe Pattern — Edge Softness</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Transition &gt; Wipe Param</b>	<p>Select the amount of softness to apply to the edge of the pattern or border for the wipe pattern you want to use for a wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Softness</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter an amount of softness for the pattern or border in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>Wipe Pattern — Horizontal Multiplication</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Transition &gt; Wipe Param</b>	<p>Select the number of times you want to multiply the wipe pattern horizontally for the wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Horizontal Mult.</b></li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter the number of times the pattern is multiplied in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>Wipe Pattern — Pattern</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Transition &gt; Wipe Effect</b>	<p>Select the pattern you want to use for a wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Pattern</b> button and select the pattern you want to use for the wipe.</li> </ol>
<b>Wipe Pattern — Rotation</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Transition &gt; Wipe Param</b>	<p>Select the rotation for the wipe pattern you want to use for a wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Rotation</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter a rotation in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>Wipe Pattern — Size</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Transition &gt; Wipe Param</b>	<p>Select the size for the wipe pattern you want to use for a wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Size</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter a new size in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>Wipe Pattern — Vertical Multiplication</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Transition &gt; Wipe Param</b>	<p>Select the number of times you want to multiply the wipe pattern vertically for the wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Vertical Mult.</b></li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter the number of times the pattern is multiplied in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
<b>Wipe Pattern — X-Position</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Transition &gt; Wipe Param</b>	<p>Select the x-axis position for the wipe pattern you want to use for a wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>X-Pos</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter a new position in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>Wipe Pattern — Y-Position</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Transition &gt; Wipe Param</b>	<p>Select the y-axis position for the wipe pattern you want to use for a wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Y-Pos</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter a new position in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>Wipe Reset</b>	<b>Switcher &gt; Transition &gt; Wipe Reset</b>	<p>Reset the parameters or direction and flip-flop for the wipe transition of the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Reset Params</b> to reset the wipe parameters or <b>Reset Direction</b> to reset the wipe direction and flip-flop.</li> </ol>

## Personality Custom Controls

### Personality

Event	Location	Description
<b>Personality — Auto Remove Key</b>	<b>Switcher Personality &gt; Auto Remove Key</b>	<p>Have a key removed from the Next Transition area, so that it is not included in the next transition, after it has been transitioned off-air using the <b>KEY X CUT</b> or <b>KEY X AUTO</b> buttons.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Value</b> button and select whether the personality option is on (<b>On</b>) or not (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>
<b>Personality — Auto Trans Second Press (Key)</b>	<b>Switcher Personality &gt; Key Auto Trans 2nd Press</b>	<p>Select how the switcher reacts when the <b>KEY AUTO</b> button is pressed during a transition.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Second Auto</b> button and select how the switcher reacts to pressing the button during a transition. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Ignore</b> — the buttons are ignored during the transition</li> <li>• <b>Halt Forward</b> — halt the transition and move forward through the transition when pressed again</li> <li>• <b>Halt Reverse</b> — halt the transition and move backwards through the transition when pressed again</li> <li>• <b>Reverse</b> — reverse the transition immediately</li> <li>• <b>Cut</b> — cut the transition to the end</li> </ul> </li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
Personality — Auto Trans Second Press (ME)	Switcher Personality > ME Auto Trans 2nd Press	<p>Select how the switcher reacts when the <b>AUTO TRANS</b> button is pressed during a transition.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>Second Auto</b> button and select how the switcher reacts to pressing the button during a transition. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ignore</b> — the buttons are ignored during the transition</li> <li><b>Halt Forward</b> — halt the transition and move forward through the transition when pressed again</li> <li><b>Halt Reverse</b> — halt the transition and move backwards through the transition when pressed again</li> <li><b>Reverse</b> — reverse the transition immediately</li> <li><b>Cut</b> — cut the transition to the end</li> </ul> </li> </ol>
Personality — Next Trans Reset	Switcher Personality > Auto Reset Trans	<p>Have the transition area reset to a default background dissolve after each transition.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>Click the <b>Value</b> button and select whether the personality option is on (<b>On</b>) or not (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>
Personality — Roll Clip	Switcher Personality > Roll Clip Force	<p>Select whether the Roll Clip functionality is always on.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that you want to adjust the roll clip for.</li> <li>Click a <b>Roll Clip</b> button to select whether Roll Clip is always on (<b>Force</b>) or must be turned on manually (<b>User</b>).</li> </ol>

## Installation Custom Controls

### Switcher Installation

Event	Location	Description
AES Output	Switcher Installation > Output > AES	<p>Assign an audio stream to an AES output.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>AES</b> button for the AES output you want to assign an audio stream to.</li> <li>Click the <b>Value</b> button and select the audio stream you want to assign to the AES output.</li> </ol>
Ancillary Data Mode	Switcher Installation > Ancillary Mode	<p>Select how the switcher will strip or pass ancillary data.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click a <b>Value</b> button to select whether ancillary data is stripped (<b>Strip</b>), or passed (<b>Pass</b>).</li> </ol>
Clean Feed	Switcher Installation > ME > ME Clean Feed	<p>Select the clean feed location for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>Click the <b>Before Keyer</b> button and select the key you want the clean feed output to be taken before.</li> </ol>
Color Corrector Color Reset	Switcher Installation > Proc Amp/Color Corrector > Color Corrector R/G/B Reset	<p>Reset the values for the selected color corrector color channel(s).</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>Color</b> button and select the individual color component (<b>Red</b>, <b>Green</b>, <b>Blue</b>) you want to adjust, or <b>RGB</b> for all of them.</li> </ol>



Event	Location	Description
Color Corrector Enable	Switcher Installation > Proc Amp/Color Corrector > Color Corrector Enable	<p>Enable a Color Corrector for a video input or output.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li></li> <li>Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>Click a <b>Value</b> button to select whether to enable the color corrector (<b>On</b>) or disable the color corrector (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>
Color Corrector Gain	Switcher Installation > Proc Amp/Color Corrector > Color Corrector Param	<p>Adjust the Gain for the selected color corrector.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li></li> <li>Click the <b>Color</b> button and select the individual color component (<b>Red, Green, Blue</b>) you want to adjust, or <b>RGB</b> for all of them.</li> <li>Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Gain</b>.</li> <li>Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>Enter the new gain value in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> </ol>
Color Corrector Gamma	Switcher Installation > Proc Amp/Color Corrector > Color Corrector Param	<p>Adjust the Offset for the selected color corrector.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li></li> <li>Click the <b>Color</b> button and select the individual color component (<b>Red, Green, Blue</b>) you want to adjust, or <b>RGB</b> for all of them.</li> <li>Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Gamma Value</b>.</li> <li>Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>Enter the new gamma value in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> </ol>
Color Corrector Gamma Offset	Switcher Installation > Proc Amp/Color Corrector > Color Corrector Param	<p>Adjust the Gamma Offset for the selected color corrector.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li></li> <li>Click the <b>Color</b> button and select the individual color component (<b>Red, Green, Blue</b>) you want to adjust, or <b>RGB</b> for all of them.</li> <li>Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Gamma Offset</b>.</li> <li>Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>Enter the new gamma offset value in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> </ol>
Color Corrector Lower Offset	Switcher Installation > Proc Amp/Color Corrector > Color Corrector Param	<p>Adjust the Lower Offset for the selected color corrector.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li></li> <li>Click the <b>Color</b> button and select the individual color component (<b>Red, Green, Blue</b>) you want to adjust, or <b>RGB</b> for all of them.</li> <li>Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Lower Offset</b>.</li> <li>Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>Enter the new lower offset value in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> </ol>
Color Corrector Offset	Switcher Installation > Proc Amp/Color Corrector > Color Corrector Param	<p>Adjust the Offset for the selected color corrector.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li></li> <li>Click the <b>Color</b> button and select the individual color component (<b>Red, Green, Blue</b>) you want to adjust, or <b>RGB</b> for all of them.</li> <li>Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Offset</b>.</li> <li>Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>Enter the new offset value in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
Color Corrector Reset	Switcher Installation > Proc Amp/Color Corrector > Color Corrector Reset	Reset the values for the selected color corrector. 1.
Color Gamut, Input	Switcher Installation > Input > Input Color Gamut	Select the color gamut that video input is in. 1. Click the <b>Input</b> button and select the input BNC that you want to set the color gamut for. 2. Click a <b>Value</b> button to select the whether the input is in BT.709 ( <b>709</b> ) or BT.2020 ( <b>2020</b> ).
Color Gamut, Output	Switcher Installation > Output > Output Color Gamut	Select the color gamut that video output is in. 1. Click the <b>Output</b> button and select the output BNC that you want to set the color gamut for. 2. Click a <b>Value</b> button to select the whether the output is in BT.709 ( <b>709</b> ) or BT.2020 ( <b>2020</b> ).
Color Gamut, Switcher	Switcher Installation > Reference > Switcher Color Gamut	Select the color gamut that the switcher will operate in. 1. Click a <b>Gamut</b> button to select the whether the switcher operates in BT.709 ( <b>709</b> ) or BT.2020 ( <b>2020</b> ).
Disable Audio Memories	Switcher Installation > Disable Audio Memories	Disable the inclusion of audio attributes in memories. 1. Click a <b>Value</b> button to select whether audio is included with memory recalls ( <b>On</b> ), or not ( <b>Off</b> ).
Dynamic Range, Input	Switcher Installation > Input > Input Dynamic Range	Select the dynamic range that a video input is in. 1. Click the <b>Input</b> button and select the input BNC that you want to set the dynamic range for. 2. Click a <b>Value</b> button to select the dynamic range that the input is in.
Dynamic Range, Output	Switcher Installation > Output > Output Dynamic Range	Select the dynamic range that a video output is in. 1. Click the <b>Output</b> button and select the output BNC that you want to set the dynamic range for. 2. Click a <b>Value</b> button to select the dynamic range that the output is in.
Dynamic Range, Switcher	Switcher Installation > Reference > Switcher Dynamic Range	Select the dynamic range that the switcher will operate in. 1. Click a <b>Dynamic Range</b> button to select the dynamic range that the switcher operates in.
Frame Delay	Switcher Installation > Input > Frame Delay	Assign a Frame Delay to an input. 1. Click the <b>Input</b> button and select the input BNC that you want to assign an frame delay to. 2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set ( <b>Absolute</b> ) or reset ( <b>Reset</b> ) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter. 3. In the <b>Value</b> field, enter the value of the frame delay you want to apply.
FSFC Assignment	Switcher Installation > Input FSFC Assign	Assign an FSFC to an input BNC. This event is only available if you have fewer FSFCs than inputs. 1. Click the <b>FSFC</b> button and select the FSFC resource that you want to assign to an input. 2. Click the <b>Assignment</b> button and select the input that you want to assign the selected FSFC to.
Input FSFC Assignment	Switcher Installation > Input > Input Type	Assign an FSFC to an input. 1. Click the <b>Input</b> button and select the input BNC that you want to assign an FSFC to. 2. Click a <b>ValueType</b> button to assign an FSFC to the input or select ( <b>SDI Off</b> ) to turn the FSFC off.

Event	Location	Description
<b>Input FSFC Framing</b>	<b>Switcher Installation &gt; Input &gt; Input Framing</b>	<p>Select the video framing that is applied to the converted video input.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Input</b> button and select the input BNC that you want to assign the framing to.</li> <li>2. Click a <b>Type</b> button for the input FSFC that is being used.</li> <li>3. Click a <b>Value</b> button to assign a type of framing to the input.</li> </ol>
<b>Input Scaler Mode</b> (UHDTV1 Only)	<b>Switcher Installation &gt; Input &gt; Input Scaler Mode</b>	<p>Select the format of the video input to be converted.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Input</b> button and select the input BNC that you want to assign the scaler to.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Value</b> button and select the format of the video input.</li> </ol>
<b>Layer Mode</b>	<b>Switcher Installation &gt; ME &gt; ME Layer Mode</b>	<p>Select whether external layer mode is active for the selected ME.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button for the ME that you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>3. Click a <b>Value</b> button to select whether external layer mode is on (<b>On</b>) or not (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>
<b>ME Follow</b>	<b>Switcher Installation &gt; ME &gt; ME Follow</b>	<p>Select whether an ME or MiniME™ follows another ME or MiniME™.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area you want to have follow another area.</li> <li>2. Click a <b>Follow</b> button to select the ME or MiniME™ that you want to follow the selected area.</li> </ol>
<b>Output Assignment</b>	<b>Switcher Installation &gt; Output &gt; Output Assignment</b>	<p>Assign a source to the selected output BNC.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Output</b> button and select the output BNC that you want to assign a source to.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Source</b> button and select the source that you want to assign to the selected output BNC.</li> </ol>
<b>Proc Amp/Color Corrector Reset</b>	<b>Switcher Installation &gt; Proc Amp/Color Corrector &gt; Proc Amp / Color Corrector Reset</b>	<p>Reset the values for the selected proc amp or color corrector.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1.</li> </ol>
<b>Proc Amp Enable</b>	<b>Switcher Installation &gt; Proc Amp/Color Corrector &gt; Proc Amp Enable</b>	<p>Enable a Proc Amp for a video input or output.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>3. Click a <b>Value</b> button to select whether to enable the proc amp (<b>On</b>) or disable the proc amp (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>
<b>Proc Amp Gain</b>	<b>Switcher Installation &gt; Proc Amp/Color Corrector &gt; Proc Amp Param</b>	<p>Adjust the gain of a color component for the selected proc amp.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Component</b> button and select the color component you want to adjust the gain for.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Gain</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter the new gain value in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
Proc Amp Gamma	Switcher Installation > Proc Amp/Color Corrector > Proc Amp Param	Adjust the Gamma for the selected proc amp. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Component</b> button and select <b>YCrCb</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Gamma</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set <b>(Absolute)</b> or reset <b>(Reset)</b> the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter the new gamma value in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> </ol>
Proc Amp Gamma Offset	Switcher Installation > Proc Amp/Color Corrector > Proc Amp Param	Adjust the Gamma for the selected proc amp. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Component</b> button and select <b>YCrCb</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Gamma Offset</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set <b>(Absolute)</b> or reset <b>(Reset)</b> the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter the new gamma offset value in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> </ol>
Proc Amp Hue Rotation	Switcher Installation > Proc Amp/Color Corrector > Proc Amp Hue Rot	Adjust the Hue for the selected proc amp. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set <b>(Absolute)</b> or reset <b>(Reset)</b> the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>3. Enter a new hue rotation value in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> </ol>
Proc Amp Offset	Switcher Installation > Proc Amp/Color Corrector > Proc Amp Param	Adjust the offset of a color component for the selected proc amp. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Component</b> button and select the color component you want to adjust the offset for.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Parameter</b> button and select <b>Offset</b>.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set <b>(Absolute)</b> or reset <b>(Reset)</b> the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter the new offset value in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> </ol>
Proc Amp Reset	Switcher Installation > Proc Amp/Color Corrector > Proc Amp Reset	Reset the values for the selected proc amp. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1.</li> </ol>
Rotation Mode, Output	Switcher Installation > Output > Output Rotation Mode	Enable video rotation on a selected output. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Output</b> button and select the output BNC that you want to apply rotation to.</li> <li>2. Click a <b>Value</b> button to select the amount of rotation to apply to the output.</li> </ol>
Rotation Zoom, Output	Switcher Installation > Output > Output Rotation	Adjust the size of the rotated output image. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Output</b> button and select the output BNC that you want to adjust the rotation for.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Zoom</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set <b>(Absolute)</b> or reset <b>(Reset)</b> the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter new size in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
Rotation X-Position, Output	Switcher Installation > Output > Output Rotation	Adjust the rotated image along the x-axis. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>Output</b> button and select the output BNC that you want to adjust the rotation for.</li> <li>Click <b>X-Pos</b>.</li> <li>Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>Enter new x-axis offset in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> </ol>
Rotation Y-Position, Output	Switcher Installation > Output > Output Rotation	Adjust the rotated image along the y-axis. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>Output</b> button and select the output BNC that you want to adjust the rotation for.</li> <li>Click <b>Y-Pos</b>.</li> <li>Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>Enter new y-axis offset in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> </ol>
Source Substitution, Bus	Switcher Installation > Source Substitution > Source Bus Subst	Set a bus source substitution for the substitution table. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>Source</b> button and select the source that you want to set a substitution for.</li> <li>Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the area that the bus you want to set up the substitution for is on.</li> <li>Click the <b>Bus/Keyer</b> button and select the bus (<b>Background</b> or <b>Preset</b>) or keyer for the substitution.</li> <li>If you selected <b>Keyer</b>, click the <b>Bus</b> button and select the video (<b>Video</b>) or alpha (<b>Alpha</b>) bus that you want to substitute for</li> <li>Click the <b>Subst</b> button and select the source you want to substitute for the selected source.</li> </ol>
Source Substitution, Delete	Switcher Installation > Source Substitution > Delete Subst Table	Delete the entire substitution table.
Source Substitution, ME	Switcher Installation > Source Substitution > Source ME Subst	Set an ME source substitution for the substitution table. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>Source</b> button and select the source that you want to set a substitution for.</li> <li>Click the <b>ME</b> button and select the MiniME™ that you want to assign a substitution source to.</li> <li>Click the <b>Subst</b> button and select the source you want to substitute for the selected source.</li> </ol>
Switching Field	Switcher Installation > Field Dominance	Select the field that a video transition will be performed on. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click a <b>Switch Field</b> button to select whether video transitions are performed on field 1 only (<b>Field 1</b>), field 2 only (<b>Field 2</b>), or the current field (<b>Both</b>).</li> </ol>
TSL Address	Switcher Installation > Input > TSL Address	Assign a TSL id to an input. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>Input</b> button and select the input BNC that you want to set the TSL id for.</li> <li>Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>Enter the TSL id in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> </ol>
TSL Tally MultiViewer Display Mode (Name)	Switcher Installation > Input > TSL Tally Mode	Assign a TSL id to an input. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the <b>Input</b> button and select the input BNC that you want to set the TSL mode for.</li> <li>Click a <b>TSL Tally</b> button to select whether the MultiViewer shows the Mnemonic name (<b>Name Only</b>), TSL name (<b>Tally Only</b>), or both (<b>Both</b>).</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
<b>Video Mode</b>	<b>Switcher Installation &gt; Reference &gt; Video Format</b>	<p>Select the video format that the switcher will operate in.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Video Mode</b> button and select the video format for the switcher.</li> </ol>

## MultiViewer

Event	Location	Description
<b>MultiViewer Box — Apply to All</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; Box &gt; MV Box Apply To All</b>	<p>Apply the configurations for the selected box to all boxed on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Box</b> button and select the box that you want perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click <b>Apply to All</b>.</li> </ol>
<b>MultiViewer Box — Aspect Ratio Markers</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; Box &gt; MV Box Aspect Ratio</b>	<p>Select whether aspect ratio markers are shown for the selected box on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Box</b> button and select the box that you want perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Click a <b>Value</b> button and select whether aspect ratio markers are shown (<b>On</b>) or not (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>
<b>MultiViewer Box — Border</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; Box &gt; MV Box Border Mode</b>	<p>Select the type of border you want to apply to the selected box on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Box</b> button and select the box that you want perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click a <b>Border Mode</b> button and select whether the border around the selected box is white (<b>White</b>), black (<b>Black</b>), or if there is no border (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>
<b>MultiViewer Box — Green Tally (Preview)</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; Box &gt; MV Box Preview Tally</b>	<p>Select whether a green (preview) tally is shown for the selected box on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Box</b> button and select the box that you want perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Click a <b>Value</b> button and select whether a green tally is shown on the selected box (<b>On</b>) or not (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
<b>MultiViewer Box — Label</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; Box &gt; MV Box Label</b>	<p>Select whether the source label is on or off for the selected box on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Box</b> button and select the box that you want perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Click a <b>Value</b> button and select whether the label on the selected box is on (<b>On</b>) or not (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>
<b>MultiViewer Box — Label Mode</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; Box &gt; MV Box Label Mode</b>	<p>Select what source name is shown on the label for the selected box on the selected MultiViewer. This event only applies to the Carbonite eXtreme.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Box</b> button and select the box that you want perform the event on.</li> <li>3.</li> </ol>
<b>MultiViewer Box — Label Position</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; Box &gt; MV Box Label Position</b>	<p>Select the position of the source label for the selected box on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Box</b> button and select the box that you want perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Click a <b>Value</b> button and select whether the label on the selected box is at the top (<b>Top</b>) or bottom (<b>Bottom</b>).</li> </ol>
<b>MultiViewer Box — Label Transparency</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; MV Label Transp</b>	<p>Select transparency for the background behind the source labels on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>3. Enter the amount of transparency in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>MultiViewer Box — Red Tally (On-Air)</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; Box &gt; MV Box On-Air Tally</b>	<p>Select whether a red (on-air) tally is shown for the selected box on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Box</b> button and select the box that you want perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Click a <b>Value</b> button and select whether a red tally is shown on the selected box (<b>On</b>) or not (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>
<b>MultiViewer Box — Video Source</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; Box &gt; MV Box Source</b>	<p>Assign a source to one of the boxes on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Box</b> button and select the box that you want perform the event on.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Value</b> button and select the source that you want to assign to the box.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
MultiViewer — Clip	MultiViewer > MV Keyer Clip	<p>Select the amount of clipping to be applied to the overlay source on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>3. Enter the amount of clipping to be applied in the <b>Value</b> field.</li> </ol>
MultiViewer Clock — Background Color (HSL)	MultiViewer > Clock > MV Clock (HSL Color)	<p>Select the custom color for the background of the clock on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Clock Area</b> button and select <b>Background</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Component</b> button and select the HSL component you want to assign a value to. A value should be applied to all three components.</li> <li>5. Enter a value for the selected component in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
MultiViewer Clock — Background Color (Preset)	MultiViewer > Clock > MV Clock (Preset Color)	<p>Select a preset color for the background of the clock on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Background</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Color</b> button and select the color you want to use.</li> </ol>
MultiViewer Clock — Countdown Timer Direction	MultiViewer > Clock > Countdown Timer Direction	<p>Select the direction you want to countdown timer to count in.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Timer</b> button and select the timer you want to configure.</li> <li>2. Click a <b>Timer Direction</b> button to select whether the timer counts down from a preset value (<b>Down</b>), up from zero (<b>Up</b>), or down from a preset value and then up from zero (<b>Down &gt; Up</b>).</li> </ol>
MultiViewer Clock — Countdown Timer Reset	MultiViewer > Clock > Countdown Timer Reset	<p>Reset the selected timer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Timer Reset</b> button and select the timer you want to reset.</li> </ol>
MultiViewer Clock — Countdown Timer State	MultiViewer > Clock > Countdown Timer State	<p>Select the direction you want to countdown timer to count in.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Timer</b> button and select the timer you want to configure.</li> <li>2. Click a <b>Timer State</b> button to select whether to send the pause (<b>Pause</b>), or start (<b>Run</b>) command to the timer.</li> </ol>
MultiViewer Clock — Foreground Color (HSL)	MultiViewer > Clock > MV Clock (HSL Color)	<p>Select the custom color for the lettering of the clock on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Clock Area</b> button and select <b>Foreground</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Component</b> button and select the HSL component you want to assign a value to. A value should be applied to all three components.</li> <li>5. Enter a value for the selected component in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>



Event	Location	Description
<b>MultiViewer Clock — Foreground Color (Preset)</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; Clock &gt; MV Clock (Preset Color)</b>	<p>Select a preset color for the lettering of the clock on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Foreground</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Color</b> button and select the color you want to use.</li> </ol>
<b>MultiViewer Clock — Format</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; Clock &gt; MV Clock Format</b>	<p>Select the hour format for the clock on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click a <b>Value</b> button and select whether the clock shows 24-hour (<b>24-Hours</b>), 12-hour with am/pm (<b>12-Hour AM/PM</b>), or simple 12-hour (<b>12-Hour</b>) clock.</li> </ol>
<b>MultiViewer Clock — Mode</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; Clock &gt; MV Clock Mode</b>	<p>Select whether the clock shows timecode or system time on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click a <b>Clock Mode</b> button and select whether the clock shows timecode (<b>Timecode</b>), system time (<b>System</b>), a countdown timer (<b>CountDown</b>), or is off (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>
<b>MultiViewer Clock — MV Timer</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; Clock &gt; MV Timer</b>	<p>Select which countdown timer you want a MultiViewer to use.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Timer</b> button and select the timer (1-5) that you want to assign to the selected MultiViewer.</li> </ol>
<b>MultiViewer Clock — Size</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; Clock &gt; MV Clock Param</b>	<p>Select the size of the clock on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Clock Size</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter the size of the clock in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>MultiViewer Clock — Timecode Frame Count</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; Clock &gt; MV Clock Frame Count</b>	<p>Select whether number of frames for a timecode are shown on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>3. Click a <b>Value</b> button and select whether the frame count is shown (<b>On</b>) or not (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>
<b>MultiViewer Clock — Timer Set Time (Minutes)</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; Clock &gt; Timer Set Times</b>	<p>Set the starting time in minutes for the timer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Timer</b> button and select the timer you want to configure.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Set Time (Minutes)</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. In the <b>Value</b> field, enter the number of minutes that you want to start the timer at.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
<b>MultiViewer Clock — Timer Set Time (Seconds)</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; Clock &gt; Timer Set Times</b>	<p>Set the starting time in seconds for the timer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Timer</b> button and select the timer you want to configure.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Set Time (Seconds)</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. In the <b>Value</b> field, enter the number of seconds (0-59) that you want to start the timer at. If you want a value that is larger than 59 seconds you must insert a command for minutes and then a command for seconds.</li> </ol>
<b>MultiViewer Clock — X-Position</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; Clock &gt; MV Clock Param</b>	<p>Select the horizontal position of the clock on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Clock X-Pos</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter the horizontal position of the clock in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>MultiViewer Clock — Y-Position</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; Clock &gt; MV Clock Param</b>	<p>Select the vertical position of the clock on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Clock Y-Pos</b>.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter the vertical position of the clock in the <b>Value (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>MultiViewer — Follow</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; MV Follow</b>	<p>Select whether a MultiViewer follows the layout of a .</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click a <b>Follow</b> button to select which the MultiViewer will follow or select <b>Off</b> to have the MultiViewer operate normally.</li> </ol>
<b>MultiViewer — FSFC Label</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; MV FSFC Label</b>	<p>Select whether FSFC is shown on the label on the selected MultiViewer when a source has an FSFC applies to it.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>3. Click a <b>Value</b> button to select whether FSFC is shown on the label (<b>On</b>) or not (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>
<b>MultiViewer — Layout</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; MV Layout</b>	<p>Select a layout for the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Layout</b> button and select the layout you want to use.</li> </ol>
<b>MultiViewer — Overlay</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; MV Overlay</b>	<p>Select whether the MultiViewer overlay is turned on or not.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>3. Click a <b>Value</b> button to select whether the overlay is turned on (<b>On</b>) or not (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
<b>MultiViewer — Shift</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; MV Shift</b>	<p>Select whether the sources on the selected MultiViewer are shifted, or not.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>3. Click a <b>Value</b> button to select whether the MultiViewer shows the shifted sources (<b>On</b>) or not (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>
<b>MultiViewer — Shift Panel</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; MV Shift Panel</b>	<p>Select which control panel the MultiViewer shift is following. When <b>Shift</b> is press on the selected panel, the selected MultiViewer shifts.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click <b>Panel</b> and click the control panel you want to shift to follow or click <b>Off</b> to have shift not follow any panel.</li> </ol>
<b>MultiViewer — Tally Display</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; MV Tally Display</b>	<p>Select how the tallies are shown on the selected MultiViewer.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click a <b>Tally Display</b> button to select whether tallies are shown as a border around the box (<b>Box</b>), as boxes on either side of the label (<b>Label</b>), or as boxes on either side of the label but swapped (<b>Label Reverse</b>).</li> </ol>
<b>MultiViewer — ViewControl Shift</b>	<b>MultiViewer &gt; View Control Shift</b>	<p>Select whether the ViewControl sources are shifted, or not.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click a <b>MultiViewer</b> button to select which MultiViewer you want to perform the event on.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>3. Click a <b>Value</b> button to select whether ViewControl shows the shifted sources (<b>On</b>) or not (<b>Off</b>).</li> </ol>

## Device Custom Controls

### Audio Mixer (Device)

Event	Location	Description
<b>Audio Mixer Pan</b>	<b>Devices &gt; Audio Mixer</b>	<p>Set the pan level for the selected channel on the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <b>Audio Pan</b>.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Audio Mixer</b> button and select the device you want to send the command to.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Channel</b> button and select the channel you want to send the command to.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter the new pan level in the <b>Pan Left/Right (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
<b>Audio Mixer Volume</b>	<b>Devices &gt; Audio Mixer</b>	<p>Set the level for the selected channel on the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <b>Audio Volume</b>.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Audio Mixer</b> button and select the device you want to send the command to.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Channel</b> button and select the channel you want to send the command to.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter the new audio level in the <b>Volume (%)</b> field.</li> </ol>

## Camera

Event	Location	Description
<b>Robotic Camera — Halt All</b>	<b>Devices &gt; Camera</b>	<p>Send the halt command to the selected camera.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <b>Camera Halt All</b>.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Camera</b> button and select the device you want to send the command to.</li> </ol>
<b>Robotic Camera — Recall Shot</b>	<b>Devices &gt; Camera</b>	<p>Recall a shot on the selected camera at the rate/speed set in the shot.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <b>Recall Shot</b>.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Camera</b> button and select the device you want to send the command to.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Channel</b> button and select the channel you want to send the command to.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter the shot number you want to recall from in the <b>Shot</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>Robotic Camera — Recall Shot Fast</b>	<b>Devices &gt; Camera</b>	<p>Recall a shot on the selected camera as quickly as possible.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <b>Recall Shot (Fast)</b>.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Camera</b> button and select the device you want to send the command to.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Channel</b> button and select the channel you want to send the command to.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter the shot number you want to recall from in the <b>Shot</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>Robotic Camera — Store Shot</b>	<b>Devices &gt; Camera</b>	<p>Store a shot on the selected camera.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <b>Store Shot</b>.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>Camera</b> button and select the device you want to send the command to.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Channel</b> button and select the channel you want to send the command to.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter the shot number you want to store to in the <b>Shot</b> field.</li> </ol>

## GPI

Event	Location	Description
<b>GPI Output — Edge Trigger Setup</b>	<b>Devices &gt; GPO</b>	<p>Set up the type of edge trigger for the GPI output.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <b>GPO Edge Duration</b></li> <li>2. Click the <b>GPO</b> button and select the GPI output that you want to configure.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter the duration of the edge trigger in the <b>Duration (fr)</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>GPI Output — Level Trigger Setup</b>	<b>Devices &gt; GPO</b>	<p>Set up the type of level trigger for the GPI output.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <b>GPO Level Config</b></li> <li>2. Click the <b>GPO</b> button and select the GPI output that you want to configure.</li> <li>3. Click a <b>Level</b> to select whether the level trigger uses a high (<b>High</b>) or low (<b>Low</b>) level trigger.</li> </ol>
<b>GPI Output — Mode</b>	<b>Devices &gt; GPO</b>	<p>Select whether the level trigger GPI output act as a tally.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <b>GPO Mode</b></li> <li>2. Click the <b>GPO</b> button and select the GPI output that you want to configure.</li> <li>3. Click a <b>Mode</b> button to select whether the level trigger GPI output, when assigned to video source, acts as a roll clip (<b>Normal</b>) or as a tally (<b>Tally</b>) for the selected source.</li> </ol>
<b>GPI Output — Trigger</b>	<b>Devices &gt; GPO</b>	<p>Trigger a GPI output.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <b>GPO Trigger</b></li> <li>2. Click the <b>GPO</b> button and select the GPI output that you want to trigger.</li> </ol>
<b>GPI Output — Trigger Type</b>	<b>Devices &gt; GPO</b>	<p>Select the type of trigger for the GPI output.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <b>GPO Trigger Configuration</b></li> <li>2. Click the <b>GPO</b> button and select the GPI output that you want to configure.</li> <li>3. Click a <b>Trigger</b> to select whether the GPI output uses a level (<b>Level</b>) or edge (<b>Edge</b>) trigger.</li> </ol>

## PBus II

Event	Location	Description
<b>PBus — Recall</b>	<b>Devices &gt; PBus</b>	<p>Recall a register on the selected PBus device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <b>PBus Recall Register</b>.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>PBus</b> button and select the device you want to send the command to.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Device</b> button and select the channel you want to send the command to.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter number of the register you want to recall in the <b>Register</b> field.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
<b>PBus — Trigger</b>	<b>Devices &gt; PBus</b>	<p>Trigger a function on the selected PBus device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click <b>PBus Trigger Function</b>.</li> <li>2. Click the <b>PBus</b> button and select the device you want to send the command to.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Device</b> button and select the channel you want to send the command to.</li> <li>4. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>5. Enter the number of the function you want to trigger in the <b>Function</b> field.</li> </ol>

## RossTalk

*Table 1: RossTalk (XPression)*

Event	Location	Description
<b>RossTalk CC</b>	<b>Devices &gt; RossTalk (XPression) &gt; CC</b>	<p>Send the simulated custom control to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the bank of the custom control in the <b>Bank</b> field.</li> <li>3. Enter the number of the custom control in the <b>Custom</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>RossTalk Clear All</b>	<b>Devices &gt; RossTalk (XPression) &gt; Clear All</b>	<p>Send the Clear All command to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> </ol>
<b>RossTalk Clear Channel</b>	<b>Devices &gt; RossTalk (XPression) &gt; Clear Channel</b>	<p>Send the Clear Framebuffer command to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the framebuffer that you want to perform the action on in the <b>Channel</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>RossTalk Clear Layer</b>	<b>Devices &gt; RossTalk (XPression) &gt; Clear Layer</b>	<p>Send the Clear Framebuffer command for a framebuffer and layer to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the framebuffer that you want to perform the action on in the <b>Channel</b> field.</li> <li>3. Enter the layer that you want to perform the action on in the <b>Layer</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>RossTalk — Cue Channel</b>	<b>Devices &gt; RossTalk (XPression) &gt; Cue (2)</b>	<p>Send the Cue command for a specific item and framebuffer to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the take item id of the item you want to perform the action on in the <b>Take ID</b> field.</li> <li>3. Enter the framebuffer that you want to perform the action on in the <b>Channel</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>RossTalk — Cue Current</b>	<b>Devices &gt; RossTalk (XPression) &gt; Cue</b>	<p>Send the Cue command to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
RossTalk — Cue Item	Devices > RossTalk (XPression) > Cue (1)	Send the Cue command for a specific item to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the take item id of the item you want to perform the action on in the <b>Take ID</b> field.</li> </ol>
RossTalk — Cue Layer	Devices > RossTalk (XPression) > Cue (3)	Send the Cue command for a specific item and location to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the take item id of the item you want to perform the action on in the <b>Take ID</b> field.</li> <li>3. Enter the framebuffer that you want to perform the action on in the <b>Channel</b> field.</li> <li>4. Enter the layer that you want to perform the action on in the <b>Layer</b> field.</li> </ol>
RossTalk Custom Command	Devices > RossTalk (XPression) > RossTalk Custom Cmd(CRLF)	Send a manual RossTalk string to XPression. Each string has CRLF (carriage return line feed) appended to the end. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the RossTalk string in the <b>Custom Cmd</b> field.</li> </ol>
RossTalk — Focus	Devices > RossTalk (XPression) > Focus	Send the Focus command for a specific item to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the take item id of the item you want to perform the action on in the <b>Take ID</b> field.</li> </ol>
RossTalk — GPI	Devices > RossTalk (XPression) > GPI	Send the simulated GPI input to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the GPI you want to simulate triggering in the <b>GPI</b> field.</li> </ol>
RossTalk — Layer Off	Devices > RossTalk (XPression) > layer Off	Send the Layer Off command for a specific framebuffer and layer to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the framebuffer that you want to perform the action on in the <b>Channel</b> field.</li> <li>3. Enter the layer that you want to perform the action on in the <b>Layer</b> field.</li> </ol>
RossTalk — Next	Devices > RossTalk (XPression) > Next	Send the Next command to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> </ol>
RossTalk — Read Current	Devices > RossTalk (XPression) > Read	Send the Read command to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> </ol>
RossTalk — Read Item	Devices > RossTalk (XPression) > Read (1)	Send the Read command for a specific item to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the take item id of the item you want to perform the action on in the <b>Take ID</b> field.</li> </ol>
RossTalk — Read Layer	Devices > RossTalk (XPression) > Read (2)	Send the Read command for a specific item and layer to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the take item id of the item you want to perform the action on in the <b>Take ID</b> field.</li> <li>3. Enter the layer that you want to perform the action on in the <b>Layer</b> field.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
RossTalk — Resume Channel	Devices > RossTalk (XPression) > Resume Channel	Send the Resume command for a framebuffer to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the framebuffer that you want to perform the action on in the <b>Channel</b> field.</li> </ol>
RossTalk — Resume Layer	Devices > RossTalk (XPression) > Resume Layer	Send the Resume command for a framebuffer and layer to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the framebuffer that you want to perform the action on in the <b>Channel</b> field.</li> <li>3. Enter the layer that you want to perform the action on in the <b>Layer</b> field.</li> </ol>
RossTalk — Sequencer Down	Devices > RossTalk (XPression) > Sequencer Down	Send the Sequencer Down command to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> </ol>
RossTalk — Sequencer Up	Devices > RossTalk (XPression) > Sequencer Up	Send the Sequencer Up command to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> </ol>
RossTalk — Swap Channel	Devices > RossTalk (XPression) > Swap (1)	Send the Swap command for a specific framebuffer to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the framebuffer that you want to perform the action on in the <b>Channel</b> field.</li> </ol>
RossTalk — Swap Current	Devices > RossTalk (XPression) > Swap	Send the Swap command to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> </ol>
RossTalk — Swap Layer	Devices > RossTalk (XPression) > Swap (2)	Send the Swap command for a specific framebuffer and layer to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the framebuffer that you want to perform the action on in the <b>Channel</b> field.</li> <li>3. Enter the layer that you want to perform the action on in the <b>Layer</b> field.</li> </ol>
RossTalk — Take Channel	Devices > RossTalk (XPression) > Take (2)	Send the Take command for a specific item and framebuffer to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the take item id of the item you want to perform the action on in the <b>Take ID</b> field.</li> <li>3. Enter the framebuffer that you want to perform the action on in the <b>Channel</b> field.</li> </ol>
RossTalk — Take Item	Devices > RossTalk (XPression) > Take (1)	Send the Take command for a specific item to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the take item id of the item you want to perform the action on in the <b>Take ID</b> field.</li> </ol>



Event	Location	Description
RossTalk — Take Layer	Devices > RossTalk (XPression) > Take (3)	Send the Take command for a specific item and location to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the take item id of the item you want to perform the action on in the <b>Take ID</b> field.</li> <li>3. Enter the framebuffer that you want to perform the action on in the <b>Channel</b> field.</li> <li>4. Enter the layer that you want to perform the action on in the <b>Layer</b> field.</li> </ol>
RossTalk — Take Offline	Devices > RossTalk (XPression) > Take Offline	Send the Take Offline command for a specific item to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the take item id of the item you want to perform the action on in the <b>Take ID</b> field.</li> </ol>
RossTalk — Up Next	Devices > RossTalk (XPression) > Up Next	Send the Next command for a specific item to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the take item id of the item you want to perform the action on in the <b>Take ID</b> field.</li> </ol>

**Table 2: RossTalk (Generic)**

Event	Location	Description
RossTalk CC	Devices > RossTalk (Generic) > CC	Send the simulated custom control to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the bank of the custom control in the <b>Bank</b> field.</li> <li>3. Enter the number of the custom control in the <b>Custom</b> field.</li> </ol>
RossTalk Custom Command (CRLF)	Devices > RossTalk (Generic) > RossTalk Custom Cmd(CRLF)	Send a manual RossTalk string to the selected device. Each string has CRLF (carriage return line feed) appended to the end. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the RossTalk string in the <b>Custom Cmd</b> field.</li> </ol>
RossTalk Custom Command (LF)	Devices > RossTalk (Generic) > RossTalk Custom Cmd(LF)	Send a manual RossTalk string to the selected device. Each string has LF (line feed) appended to the end. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the RossTalk string in the <b>Custom Cmd</b> field.</li> </ol>
RossTalk Custom Command (CR)	Devices > RossTalk (Generic) > RossTalk Custom Cmd(CR)	Send a manual RossTalk string to the selected device. Each string has CR (carriage return) appended to the end. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the RossTalk string in the <b>Custom Cmd</b> field.</li> </ol>
RossTalk Custom Command (no CRLF)	Devices > RossTalk (Generic) > RossTalk Custom Cmd(No CRLF)	Send a manual RossTalk string to the selected device. CRLF (carriage return line feed) is not appended to the end of the string. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the RossTalk string in the <b>Custom Cmd</b> field.</li> </ol>
RossTalk — GPI	Devices > RossTalk (Generic) > GPI	Send the simulated GPI input to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the GPI you want to simulate triggering in the <b>GPI</b> field.</li> </ol>

**Table 3: RossTalk (Ultrix™)**

Event	Location	Description
<b>RossTalk Custom Command</b>	<b>Devices &gt; RossTalk (Ultrix) &gt; RossTalk Custom Cmd</b>	Send a manual RossTalk string to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the RossTalk string in the <b>Custom Cmd</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>RossTalk — MV Clock End</b>	<b>Devices &gt; RossTalk (Ultrix) &gt; MV Clock End</b>	Send the end selected clock command to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the number of the clock you want to perform the action on in the <b>MV Clock</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>RossTalk — MV Clock Pause</b>	<b>Devices &gt; RossTalk (Ultrix) &gt; MV Clock Pause</b>	Send the pause selected clock command to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the number of the clock you want to perform the action on in the <b>MV Clock</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>RossTalk — MV Clock Run</b>	<b>Devices &gt; RossTalk (Ultrix) &gt; MV Clock Run</b>	Send the run selected clock command to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the number of the clock you want to perform the action on in the <b>MV Clock</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>RossTalk — MV Clock Stop</b>	<b>Devices &gt; RossTalk (Ultrix) &gt; MV Clock Stop</b>	Send the stop selected clock command to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the number of the clock you want to perform the action on in the <b>MV Clock</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>RossTalk — Salvo</b>	<b>Devices &gt; RossTalk (Ultrix) &gt; Salvo</b>	Send the fire salvo command to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>RossTalk Device</b> button and select the device you want to send the RossTalk command to.</li> <li>2. Enter the salvo you want to fire in the <b>SALVO</b> field.</li> </ol>

## Video Server

Event	Location	Description
<b>Video Server — Cue</b>	<b>Video Server &gt; Cue</b>	Send the Cue command and name of clip to cue to the selected device. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Video Server</b> button and select the device you want to send the command to.</li> <li>2. Click a <b>Channel</b> button to select the channel you want to send the command to.</li> <li>3. Enter the identifier of the clip in the <b>Cue</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>Video Server — Get Clips</b>	<b>Video Server &gt; Get Clips</b>	Query the selected device for a list of clips. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Video Server</b> button and select the device you want to send the command to.</li> <li>2. Click a <b>Channel</b> button to select the channel you want to send the command to.</li> </ol>

Event	Location	Description
<b>Video Server — Jog</b>	Video Server > <b>Jog</b>	<p>Send the jog command to the selected device. The Jog command is not supported by the internal Clip Player at this time.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Video Server</b> button and select the device you want to send the command to.</li> <li>2. Click a <b>Channel</b> button to select the channel you want to send the command to.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter the amount you want to jog in the <b>Jog</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>Video Server — Loop Off</b>	Video Server > <b>Loop Off</b>	<p>Send the Loop Off command to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Video Server</b> button and select the device you want to send the command to.</li> <li>2. Click a <b>Channel</b> button to select the channel you want to send the command to.</li> </ol>
<b>Video Server — Loop On</b>	Video Server > <b>Loop On</b>	<p>Send the Loop On command to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Video Server</b> button and select the device you want to send the command to.</li> <li>2. Click a <b>Channel</b> button to select the channel you want to send the command to.</li> </ol>
<b>Video Server — Play</b>	Video Server > <b>Play</b>	<p>Send the Play command to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Video Server</b> button and select the device you want to send the command to.</li> <li>2. Click a <b>Channel</b> button to select the channel you want to send the command to.</li> </ol>
<b>Video Server — Record</b>	Video Server > <b>Record</b>	<p>Send the eject command to the device, followed by the record command. The clip is given the name <code>recording_DATE_TIME</code>.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Video Server</b> button and select the device you want to send the command to.</li> <li>2. Click a <b>Channel</b> button to select the channel you want to send the command to.</li> <li>3. Enter a name for the clip in the <b>Record</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>Video Server — Shuttle</b>	Video Server > <b>Shuttle</b>	<p>Send the shuttle command to the selected device. The Shuttle command is not supported by the internal Clip Player at this time.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Video Server</b> button and select the device you want to send the command to.</li> <li>2. Click a <b>Channel</b> button to select the channel you want to send the command to.</li> <li>3. Click the <b>Change Type</b> button and select whether you want to set (<b>Absolute</b>) or reset (<b>Reset</b>) the parameter. Some selections will not be available when you reset the parameter.</li> <li>4. Enter the speed you want to shuttle in the <b>Shuttle</b> field.</li> </ol>
<b>Video Server — Stop</b>	Video Server > <b>Stop</b>	<p>Send the Stop command to the selected device.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Click the <b>Video Server</b> button and select the device you want to send the command to.</li> <li>2. Click a <b>Channel</b> button to select the channel you want to send the command to.</li> </ol>

## MIDI Device OID List

The OID for the MIDI device is made of a number of parts separated by a period. These parts identify things like the device class (`audiomixer`), audio source, audio destination, and control function.

For example, the OID `audiomixer.aux.2.sdi2.volume` translates to device class (`audiomixer`), audio destination (`aux.2`), audio source (`sdi2`), and control function (`volume`). This is a continuous input that allows you to control the volume of SDI 2 on the Aux 2 out.

**Table 4: Audio Mixer OIDs**

Target	Syntax	Description
<b>Volume</b>		
Assignable Audio Channels	<code>audiomixer.main.audio1.volume</code>	Volume for assignable audio channel 1 input on the Main layer. Replace <code>audio1</code> with the assignable audio channel you want to set the volume for. Replace <code>main</code> with the Aux layer you want set the volume for ( <code>aux.1-aux.12</code> ).
Output Mix	<code>audiomixer.output.main.volume</code>	Primary volume for the Main layer. Replace <code>main</code> with the Aux layer you want set the volume for ( <code>aux.1-aux.12</code> ) or the Monitor output ( <code>monitor</code> ).
<b>Balance/Pan</b>		
Assignable Audio Channel	<code>audiomixer.main.audio1.pan</code>	Balance for assignable audio channel 1 input on the Main layer. Replace <code>audio1</code> with the assignable audio channel you want to set the balance for. Replace <code>main</code> with the Aux layer you want set the balance for ( <code>aux.1-aux.12</code> ).
<b>Equalization (EQ)</b>		
EQ Channel Select	<code>audiomixer.eqchannelselect</code>	Select the audio channel that you want to set the EQ for. This oid is assigned to a button on the same strip as that audio channel you want to EQ. This tells the mixer that the EQ values are to be applied to the selected audio channel.
EQ Bypass	<code>audiomixer.eqbypasscommon</code>	Bypass the equalization for the selected audio channel.
Low Shelf Gain	<code>audiomixer.lowshelfgaincommon</code>	Gain setting for the Low Shelf EQ of the selected audio channel.
Midrange 1 Gain	<code>audiomixer.midrange1gaincommon</code>	Gain setting for the Midrange 1 EQ of the selected audio channel.
Midrange 2 Gain	<code>audiomixer.midrange2gaincommon</code>	Gain setting for the Midrange 2 EQ of the selected audio channel.
High Shelf Gain	<code>audiomixer.highshelfgaincommon</code>	Gain setting for the High Shelf EQ of the selected audio channel.
Low Shelf Max Frequency (linear)	<code>audiomixer.lowshelfmaxfreqcommon</code>	Maximum Frequency setting for the Low Shelf EQ of the selected audio channel. Frequency selection is performed on a linear scale.
Midrange 1 Center Frequency (linear)	<code>audiomixer.midrange1centerfreqcommon</code>	Center Frequency setting for the Midrange 1 EQ of the selected audio channel. Frequency selection is performed on a linear scale.

Target	Syntax	Description
Midrange 2 Center Frequency (linear)	<code>audiomixer.midrange2centerfreqcommon</code>	Center Frequency setting for the Midrange 2 EQ of the selected audio channel. Frequency selection is performed on a linear scale.
Midrange 1 Q (linear)	<code>audiomixer.midrange1qcommon</code>	Q Ratio setting for the Midrange 1 EQ of the selected audio channel. Ratio selection is performed on a linear scale.
Midrange 2 Q (linear)	<code>audiomixer.midrange2qcommon</code>	Q Ratio setting for the Midrange 2 EQ of the selected audio channel. Ratio selection is performed on a linear scale.
High Shelf Minimum Frequency (linear)	<code>audiomixer.highshelfminfreqcommon</code>	Minimum Frequency setting for the High Shelf EQ of the selected audio channel. Frequency selection is performed on a linear scale.
Low Shelf Max Frequency (scaled)	<code>audiomixer.lowshelfmaxfreqscaledcommon</code>	Maximum Frequency setting for the Low Shelf EQ of the selected audio channel. Frequency selection is performed on a non-linear scale.
Midrange 1 Center Frequency (scaled)	<code>audiomixer.midrange1centerfreqscaledcommon</code>	Center Frequency setting for the Midrange 1 EQ of the selected audio channel. Frequency selection is performed on a non-linear scale.
Midrange 2 Center Frequency (scaled)	<code>audiomixer.midrange2centerfreqscaledcommon</code>	Center Frequency setting for the Midrange 2 EQ of the selected audio channel. Frequency selection is performed on a non-linear scale.
Midrange 1 Q (scaled)	<code>audiomixer.midrange1qscaledcommon</code>	Q Ratio setting for the Midrange 1 EQ of the selected audio channel. Ratio selection is performed on a non-linear scale.
Midrange 2 Q (scaled)	<code>audiomixer.midrange2qscaledcommon</code>	Q Ratio setting for the Midrange 2 EQ of the selected audio channel. Ratio selection is performed on a non-linear scale.
High Shelf Minimum Frequency (scaled)	<code>audiomixer.highshelfminfreqscaledcommon</code>	Minimum Frequency setting for the High Shelf EQ of the selected audio channel. Frequency selection is performed on a non-linear scale.
<b>Compressor / Limiter (C/L)</b>		
C/L Channel Select	<code>audiomixer.clchannelselect</code>	Select the audio channel that you want to set the C/L for. This oid is assigned to a button on the same strip as that audio channel you want to C/L. This tells the mixer that the C/L values are to be applied to the selected audio channel.
C/L Threshold	<code>audiomixer.thresholdscaledcommon</code>	The level at which the compressor starts to be applied.
C/L Attack	<code>audiomixer.attackcontrolscaledcommon</code>	The amount of time you want to pass between the level surpassing the threshold and the full compression ratio being applied
C/L Compression	<code>audiomixer.compressionscaledcommon</code>	The ratio for the amount of compression you want to apply.
C/L Release	<code>audiomixer.releasecontrolscaledcommon</code>	The amount of time you want to pass between the level falling below the threshold and the compression ratio returning to 1:1 (no compression applied).
C/L Makeup	<code>audiomixer.makeupgainscaledcommon</code>	Increase the gain of the audio after compression.
C/L Bypass	<code>audiomixer.clbypasscommon</code>	Bypass the equalization for the selected audio channel.

Target	Syntax	Description
<b>Gain</b>		
Analog	<code>audiomixer.abm.1.1.gain</code>	Gain for the Analog 1 input. Replace <code>abm.1.1</code> with the analog port on the ABU you want to set the gain for ( <code>abm.1.1-abm.3.8</code> ). For example, <code>abm.2.5</code> is the Analog 5 input port on ABU 2.
<b>Pad</b>		
Analog	<code>audiomixer.abm.1.1.pad</code>	Toggle pad for analog 1 input on ABU 1. Replace <code>abm.1.1</code> with the analog port on the ABU you want to set pad for ( <code>abm.1.1-abm.3.8</code> ). For example, <code>abm.2.5</code> is the Analog 5 input port on ABU 2.
<b>Phantom Power</b>		
Analog	<code>audiomixer.abm.1.1.phantompower</code>	Toggle phantom power for the analog 1 input port on ABU a. Replace <code>abm1.1</code> with the analog port on the ABU you want to set phantom power for ( <code>abm.1.1-abm.3.8</code> ). For example, <code>abm.2.5</code> is the Analog 5 input port on ABU 2.
<b>Mute</b>		
Assignable Audio Channel	<code>audiomixer.main.audio1.mute</code>	Toggle mute for assignable audio channel 1 input on the Main layer. Replace <code>audio1</code> with the assignable audio channel want to set mute for. Replace <code>main</code> with the Aux layer you want set mute for ( <code>aux.1-aux.12</code> ).
<b>Solo</b>		
Assignable Audio Channel	<code>audiomixer.main.audio1.solo</code>	Toggle solo for assignable audio channel 1 input on the Main layer. Replace <code>audio1</code> with the assignable audio channel input you want to set solo for. Replace <code>main</code> with the Aux layer you want set solo for ( <code>aux.1-aux.12</code> ).
<b>Clear Solo</b>		
Main	<code>audiomixer.output.main.clearsolo</code>	Clear solo for all sources on Main layer.
Monitor	<code>audiomixer.output.monitor.clearsolo</code>	Clear solo for all sources on Monitor layer.
Aux	<code>audiomixer.output.aux.1.clearsolo</code>	Clear solo for all sources on the Aux layers. Replace <code>Aux.1</code> with the Aux layer you want set solo for ( <code>aux.1-aux.12</code> ).
<b>Pre/Post</b>		
Assignable Audio Channel	<code>audiomixer.aux.1.audio1.pre</code>	Toggle pre fader for assignable audio channel 1 input on the Aux 1 layer. Replace <code>audio1</code> with the assignable audio channel input you want to set pre for. Replace <code>aux.1</code> with the Aux layer you want set pre for ( <code>aux.1-aux.12</code> ).
<b>PFL</b>		
Assignable Audio Channel	<code>audiomixer.audio1.pfl</code>	Toggle PFL for assignable audio channel 1. Replace <code>audio1</code> with the assignable audio channel input you want to set solo for ( <code>sdi1-sdi12</code> ).
<b>Clear PFL</b>		
All	<code>audiomixer.clearpfl</code>	Clear PFL on all sources.

---

## Third-party Licenses

### libsamplerate

Copyright (c) 2012-2016, Erik de Castro Lopo <erikd@mega-nerd.com> All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

### OpenSSL

Copyright (c) 1998-2011 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgment:  
“ This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit.  
(<http://www.openssl.org/>) ”
4. The names “ OpenSSL Toolkit ” and “ OpenSSL Project ” must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without prior written permission. For written permission, please contact [openssl-core@openssl.org](mailto:openssl-core@openssl.org).
5. Products derived from this software may not be called “ OpenSSL ” nor may “ OpenSSL ” appear in their names without prior written permission of the OpenSSL Project.
6. Redistributions of any form whatsoever must retain the following acknowledgment:  
“ This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit  
(<http://www.openssl.org/>) ”

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT ` “ AS IS ” ’ AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION)

---

HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## Original SSLeay License

Copyright (C) 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com)

All rights reserved.

This package is an SSL implementation written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com).

The implementation was written so as to conform with Netscapes SSL.

This library is free for commercial and non-commercial use as long as the following conditions are aheared to. The following conditions apply to all code found in this distribution, be it the RC4, RSA, lhash, DES, etc., code; not just the SSL code. The SSL documentation included with this distribution is covered by the same copyright terms except that the holder is Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

Copyright remains Eric Young's, and as such any Copyright notices in the code are not to be removed.

If this package is used in a product, Eric Young should be given attribution as the author of the parts of the library used.

This can be in the form of a textual message at program startup or in documentation (online or textual) provided with the package.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement:  
“ This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com) ”  
The word 'cryptographic' can be left out if the rouines from the library being used are not cryptographic related :-).
4. If you include any Windows specific code (or a derivative thereof) from the apps directory (application code) you must include an acknowledgement: “ This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com) ”

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ERIC YOUNG “ AS IS ” AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The licence and distribution terms for any publically available version or derivative of this code cannot be changed. i.e. this code cannot simply be copied and put under another distribution licence [including the GNU Public Licence.]



---

# Glossary

## Interlaced

An Interlaced video format starts at the top of the screen and draws all the odd number scan lines and then all the even number scan lines in sequence. This results in half the image being drawn in one pass and the other half of the image being drawn in the second. These two passes are called Fields, where the first pass is called Field 1 and the second pass is called Field 2. When both Field 1 and Field 2 have been drawn, resulting in a complete image, you have a single Frame.

## Progressive

A Progressive scan video format draws each scan line in sequence, starting from the top of the screen and working to the bottom. Unlike Interlaced, with Progressive scan the entire image is drawn at one time, in a single pass. This means that there are no fields in a Progressive scan image.

## Auto Key

A pairing of two video signals, a key video and a key alpha, to create a key. In the switcher, you associate the fill and alpha so that the switcher knows which alpha to use when the video is selected.

## Auto Transition

An automatic transition in which the manual movement of the fader handle is simulated electronically. The transition starts when the **AUTO TRANS** button is pressed and takes place over a pre-selected time period, measured in frames.

## Chroma Key

Chroma Key is a key in which the hole is cut based on a color value, or hue, rather than a luminance value or alpha signal. The color is removed and replaced with background video from another source.

## Cut

An instantaneous switch from one video signal to another.

## Dissolve

A transition from one video signal to another in which one signal is faded down, while the other is simultaneously faded up. The terms mix or cross-fade are often used interchangeably with dissolve.

## Field

One half of a complete picture (or frame) interval containing all of the odd, or all of the even, lines in interlaced scanning. One scan of a TV screen is called a field; two fields are required to make a complete picture (which is a frame).

## Force, Mask

An effect that forces the masked region to the foreground but is not bound by the key. For example, if you have a key and apply a mask to it. The masked area is bound by the edges of the key. When force is turned on, the masked area is filled with the video from the key (nothing appears masked) but you can move the mask outside of the key and the key video is still filling the masked region.

## Frame

One complete picture consisting of two fields of interlaced scanning lines.

## File Transfer Protocol

A network protocol that is used to transfer files from one host computer to another over a TCP-based network.

## Gain

Gain represents the range of signal values present in a video signal from a lowest to a highest point (from black to white for example). Increasing gain expands this range, while decreasing gain compresses this range. Clipping occurs if applied gain changes cause output signal values to fall outside the allowable range. Generally, increasing the gain for a specific color component causes the video signal colors to become increasingly saturated with that color. Similarly, decreasing the gain for a specific color component progressively removes that color component from the output video signal.

## Gamma

Gamma corrections introduce non-linear corrections to a video signal. A gamma

---

correction can be described as taking a point on the output versus input video signal line and pulling it perpendicularly away from the line. The result is a Bezier curve between the start, the new point, and the end point. Generally, increasing the gamma value adds more of the component to the video signal in the location of the gamma offset point. Decreasing the gamma value reduces the amount of the component in the video signal in the location of the gamma offset point. Moving the gamma offset point allows you to select which part of the input video signal receives the gamma correction. For example, if you increase the red gamma correction to the part of the video signal that has no red component you will add red to those areas while having little effect on areas that already contain a significant amount of red. This allows you to add a red tint to the image while minimizing the amount of red-clipping that occurs.

### **General Purpose Interface**

A simple high/low signal that is used to trigger an action either on an external device or on the switcher. A GPI can be an input or an output to the switcher.

### **High Definition**

A high definition (720p, 1080i, or 1080p/3G) video signal.

### **Hue**

The characteristic of a color signal that determines whether the color is red, yellow, green, blue, purple, etc. (the three characteristics of a TV color signal are chrominance, luminance, and hue). White, black, and gray are not considered hues.

### **Hue Rotation**

Hue rotate affects the color of the entire video signal by rotating the input video hues. This produces an output video signal with colors that are shifted from their original hues. By rotating colors around the wheel, hue values will shift. For example, a clockwise rotation where yellows become orange, reds become magenta, blues become green. The more rotation applied, the further around the wheel colors are shifted.

### **Key**

An effect produced by cutting a hole in the background video, then filling the hole with video or matte from another source. Key source video cuts the hole, key fill video fills the hole. The video signal used for cut and fill can come from the same, or separate, sources.

### **Key Alpha**

The video signal which cuts a hole in the background video to make a key effect possible. Also called Key Video or Source. In practice, this signal controls when a video mixer circuit will switch from background to key fill video.

### **Key Invert**

An effect that reverses the polarity of the key source so that the holes in the background are cut by dark areas of the key source instead of bright areas.

### **Key Mask**

A keying technique in which a shape is combined with the key source to block out unwanted portions of the key source.

### **Key Video**

A video input which is timed to fill the hole provided by the key source video. An example of key video is the video output of a character generator.

### **Linear Key**

Linear keys make it possible to fully specify the transparency of a key from opaque, through transparent, to fully off. The transparency is specified by the key alpha that is associated with the key video. A keyer capable of a linear key converts the key signal voltage directly to the transparency effect on the screen.

### **Mnemonics**

A green, orange, or yellow display used to show the names of a source above or below the source button or used as a custom command or pattern button.

### **Offsets**

Offsets shift the video signal by a set amount. Depending on the offset applied, different parts or all of the video signal may be affected. Clipping occurs if applied offsets cause output signal values to fall outside the allowable range.

---

### **Pre-Delay**

A pre-delay is a delay that is inserted into a transition between the triggering of a GPI output and performing the transition. The length of the pre-delay is usually the length of time your video server requires to start playing a clip or your character generator required to load a page.

### **RossTalk**

An ethernet based protocol that allows the control over Ross devices using plain english commands.

### **Standard-Definition**

A standard definition (480i or 576i) video signal.

### **Self Key**

A key effect in which the same video signal serves as both the key signal and key fill.

### **Shaped Key**

An additive key where the Key Alpha cuts a hole based on the monochrome value of the alpha. Shades of gray are translated into either white or black, giving the key a hard edge. Shaped Key alphas are sometimes used with Character Generators to cut very precise holes for the fill.

### **Split Key**

A Split key allows you to assign a different alpha source for a key than the fill/alpha associations that are set up during configuration or to use a separate alpha source for a Self key.

### **Tally**

An indicator which illuminates when the associated button, or control, is selected or is on-air.

### **Unshaped Key**

A multiplicative key where the Key Alpha cuts a hole based on the gradient values of the alpha. Shades of gray are translated into transparency levels, giving the key a soft edge. Unshaped Key alphas can also be considered true linear alphas.

---

# Index

## A

- Access Control [20](#)
- AFV [50](#)
- AFV Set, Audio [49](#)
- Allocated DVEs [93](#)
- Animations [55](#)
- Audio [55](#)
- Audio Auxes [51](#)
- Audio Follow Video [49](#)
- Audio Mixer [19](#), [49](#)
  - DashBoard [19](#)
- Auto Follow [73](#)
  - Custom Pages [73](#)
- Auto Key [71](#)
- Auto Select Keys [39](#)
- Auto Transition [32](#), [34–35](#)
- Aux Bus [25](#)
  - Source Selection [25](#)

## B

- Balance, Audio [49](#)
- BG Source [29](#)
- Bus Hold [45](#)
- Bus Map, Default [94](#)
- Bus Maps [83](#)
- Bus Select Buttons, ViewControl [85](#)
- Buses [23](#)
  - Ultritouch [23](#)

## C

- CC, *See* Custom Controls
- CC Events, *See*
- CC Pause [58](#)
- Chroma Key [40](#)
- Clean Feed [27](#), [76](#)
- Clear Custom Controls [94](#)
- Clear Memories [94](#)
- Clock, MultiViewer [79](#)
- Color Background [29](#)
- Color Schemes [82](#)
- Colors, Memory Recall [46](#)
- Copy Keys [30](#)
- Copy MEs [30](#)
- Custom Control Buttons, ViewControl [85](#)
- Custom Control Event [96](#), [127](#)
  - AES Output [121](#)
  - Ancillary Data Mode [121](#)
  - Audio Pan [132](#)
  - Audio Volume [133](#)
  - Auto Trans [114](#)
  - BKGD DVE Aspect [96](#)
  - BKGD DVE Border Size [96](#)
  - BKGD DVE Crop [97](#)

### Custom Control Event (*continued*)

- BKGD DVE Edge Softness [97](#)
- BKGD DVE Size [96](#)
- BKGD DVE X-Position [96](#)
- BKGD DVE Y-Position [96](#)
- Box Mask Edge Position [103](#)
- Box Mask Edge Softness [103](#)
- Bus Copy [111](#)
- Bus Source [111](#)
- Cancel All CC [97](#)
- Cancel CC [97](#)
- Clean Feed [121](#)
- Color Corrector Color Reset [121](#)
- Color Corrector Enable [122](#)
- Color Corrector Gain [122](#)
- Color Corrector Gamma [122](#)
- Color Corrector Gamma Offset [122](#)
- Color Corrector Lower Offset [122](#)
- Color Corrector Offset [122](#)
- Color Corrector Reset [123](#)
- Color Gamut [123](#)
- Cut Transition [114](#)
- Delay Auto Trans [117](#)
- Disable Audio Memories [123](#)
- DVE Key Aspect [98](#)
- DVE Key Border [99](#)
- DVE Key Border Color (HSL) [99](#)
- DVE Key Border Color (Preset) [99](#)
- DVE Key Crop (Bottom Edge) [99](#)
- DVE Key Crop (Dual Edge) [99](#)
- DVE Key Crop (Left Edge) [100](#)
- DVE Key Crop (Right Edge) [100](#)
- DVE Key Crop (Top Edge) [100](#)
- DVE Key Edge Softness [100](#)
- DVE Key Size [100](#)
- DVE Key X-Position [101](#)
- DVE Key Y-Position [101](#)
- DVE Wipe Direction [115](#)
- DVE Wipe Direction (Flip-Flop) [114](#)
- DVE Wipe Pattern [115](#)
- DVE Wipe, Reset [114](#)
- Dynamic Range [123](#)
- Field Dominance [126](#)

### *See also*

- Fly Key (DVE) [101](#)
- FSFC Input Assignment [123](#)
- GPI Output — Edge Trigger Setup [134](#)
- GPI Output — Level Trigger Setup [134](#)
- GPI Output — Mode [134](#)
- GPI Output — Trigger [134](#)
- GPI Output — Trigger Type [134](#)
- Hold CC [97](#)
- Input Color Gamut [123](#)
- Input Dynamic Range [123](#)
- Input Frame Delay [123](#)
- Input FSFC Assignment [123](#)
- Input FSFC Framing [124](#)

---

#### Custom Control Event (*continued*)

- Input Scaler Mode [124](#)
- Key Active [101](#)
- Key Copy [101](#)
- Key Invert [102](#)
- Key Mode [102](#)
- Key Only Transition [98](#)
- Key Settings (Clip, Gain, Transparency) [102](#)
- Key Trans Rate [98](#)
- Key Type [102](#)
- Key, Make Linear [101](#)
- Key, Reset [102](#)
- Layer Mode [124](#)
- Loop CC [97](#)
- Mask [106](#)
- Mask (Box) — Left Edge Position [103](#)
- Mask (Box) — Right Edge Position [103](#)
- Mask (Box) — Size [103](#)
- Mask (Box) — Top Edge Position [104](#)
- Mask (Box) — X-Position [104](#)
- Mask (Box) — Y-Position [104](#)
- Mask (Pattern) — Aspect Ratio [104](#)
- Mask (Pattern) — Border Size [104](#)
- Mask (Pattern) — Edge Softness [104](#)
- Mask (Pattern) — Horizontal Multiplication [105](#)
- Mask (Pattern) — Reset [105](#)
- Mask (Pattern) — Rotation [105](#)
- Mask (Pattern) — Size [105](#)
- Mask (Pattern) — Vertical Multiplication [105](#)
- Mask (Pattern) — X-Position [105](#)
- Mask (Pattern) — Y-Position [105](#)
- Mask, Force [102](#)
- Mask, Invert [103](#)
- Matte Color (HSL) [109](#)
- Matte Color (Preset) [109](#)
- Matte Color, Reset [109](#)
- ME Copy [112](#)
- ME Dissolve Type [116](#)
- ME Follow [124](#)
- ME Trans Rate [116](#)
- ME Trans Type [116](#)
- ME WhiteFlash Color [116](#)
- ME WhiteFlash Offset [116](#)
- ME WhiteFlash Onset [116](#)
- Media Cut Point, Set [115](#)
- Media Trans End Point, Set [115](#)
- Media Trans Start Point, Set [116](#)
- Media Trans Thumbnail [116](#)
- Media-Store — Auto Play [106](#)
- Media-Store — Capture [106](#)
- Media-Store — Capture Alpha [106](#)
- Media-Store — Capture Alpha Source [106](#)
- Media-Store — Capture Mode [106](#)
- Media-Store — Capture Source [106](#)
- Media-Store — Clear Channel [107](#)
- Media-Store — Cut Frame [107](#)
- Media-Store — Delete Capture [107](#)
- Media-Store — Load [107](#)
- Media-Store — Looping [107](#)
- Media-Store — Move To Frame [107](#)
- Media-Store — Mute [108](#)

#### Custom Control Event (*continued*)

- Media-Store — Play [108](#)
- Media-Store — Play Speed [108](#)
- Media-Store — Reset Media [108](#)
- Media-Store — Reverse [108](#)
- Media-Store — Rewind [108](#)
- Media-Store — Shaped [108](#)
- Media-Store — Thumb Frame [109](#)
- Media-Store — X-Position [109](#)
- Media-Store — Y-Position [109](#)
- MediaWipe — Channel [115](#)
- MediaWipe — Direction [115](#)
- MediaWipe — Direction, Flip-Flop [115](#)
- MediaWipe — Layer [115](#)
- Memory Recall [112](#)
- MultiViewer — Clip [129](#)
- MultiViewer — Follow [131](#)
- MultiViewer — FSFC Label [131](#)
- MultiViewer — Layout [131](#)
- MultiViewer — Overlay [131](#)
- MultiViewer — Shift [132](#)
- MultiViewer — Shift Panel [132](#)
- MultiViewer — Tally Display [132](#)
- MultiViewer — ViewControl Shift [132](#)
- MultiViewer Box — Apply to All [127](#)
- MultiViewer Box — Aspect Ratio Markers [127](#)
- MultiViewer Box — Border [127](#)
- MultiViewer Box — Green Tally (Preview) [127](#)
- MultiViewer Box — Label [128](#)
- MultiViewer Box — Label Mode [128](#)
- MultiViewer Box — Label Position [128](#)
- MultiViewer Box — Label Transparency [128](#)
- MultiViewer Box — Red Tally (On-Air) [128](#)
- MultiViewer Box — Video Source [128](#)
- MultiViewer Clock — Background Color (HSL) [129](#)
- MultiViewer Clock — Background Color (Preset) [129](#)
- MultiViewer Clock — Countdown Timer Direction [129](#)
- MultiViewer Clock — Countdown Timer Reset [129](#)
- MultiViewer Clock — Countdown Timer State [129](#)
- MultiViewer Clock — Foreground Color (HSL) [129](#)
- MultiViewer Clock — Foreground Color (Preset) [130](#)
- MultiViewer Clock — Format [130](#)
- MultiViewer Clock — Mode [130](#)
- MultiViewer Clock — MV Timer [130](#)
- MultiViewer Clock — Size [130](#)
- MultiViewer Clock — Timecode Frame Count [130](#)
- MultiViewer Clock — Timer Set Time (Minutes) [130](#)
- MultiViewer Clock — Timer Set Time (Seconds) [131](#)
- MultiViewer Clock — X-Position [131](#)
- MultiViewer Clock — Y-Position [131](#)
- Output BNC Assignment [124](#)
- Output Color Gamut [123](#)
- Output Dynamic Range [123](#)
- Output Rotation Mode [125](#)
- Output Rotation X-Position [126](#)
- Output Rotation Y-Position [126](#)
- Output Rotation Zoom [125](#)
- Pause CC [97](#)
- PBus — Recall [134](#)
- PBus — Trigger [135](#)
- Personality — Auto Remove Key [120](#)

---

#### Custom Control Event (*continued*)

- Personality — Auto Trans Second Press (Key) [120](#)
- Personality — Auto Trans Second Press (ME) [121](#)
- Personality — Next Trans Reset [121](#)
- Personality — Roll Clip [121](#)
- Play CC [97](#)
- Proc Amp Enable [124](#)
- Proc Amp Gain [124](#)
- Proc Amp Gamma [125](#)
- Proc Amp Gamma Offset [125](#)
- Proc Amp Hue Rotation [125](#)
- Proc Amp Offset [125](#)
- Proc Amp Reset [125](#)
- Proc Amp/Color Corrector Reset [124](#)
- Reset [116](#)
- Resume All CC [98](#)
- Resume CC [97](#)
- Robotic Camera — Halt All [133](#)
- Robotic Camera — Recall Shot [133](#)
- Robotic Camera — Recall Shot Fast [133](#)
- Robotic Camera — Store Shot [133](#)
- Roll Clip [117](#)
- RossTalk — CC [135](#), [138](#)
- RossTalk — Clear All [135](#)
- RossTalk — Clear Channel [135](#)
- RossTalk — Clear Layer [135](#)
- RossTalk — Cue Channel [135](#)
- RossTalk — Cue Current [135](#)
- RossTalk — Cue Item [136](#)
- RossTalk — Cue Layer [136](#)
- RossTalk — Focus [136](#)
- RossTalk — GPI [136](#), [138](#)
- RossTalk — Layer Off [136](#)
- RossTalk — MV Clock End [139](#)
- RossTalk — MV Clock Pause [139](#)
- RossTalk — MV Clock Run [139](#)
- RossTalk — MV Clock Stop [139](#)
- RossTalk — Next [136](#)
- RossTalk — Read Current [136](#)
- RossTalk — Read Item [136](#)
- RossTalk — Read Layer [136](#)
- RossTalk — Resume Channel [137](#)
- RossTalk — Resume Layer [137](#)
- RossTalk — Salvo [139](#)
- RossTalk — Sequencer Down [137](#)
- RossTalk — Sequencer Up [137](#)
- RossTalk — Swap Channel [137](#)
- RossTalk — Swap Current [137](#)
- RossTalk — Swap Layer [137](#)
- RossTalk — Take Channel [137](#)
- RossTalk — Take Item [137](#)
- RossTalk — Take Layer [138](#)
- RossTalk — Take Offline [138](#)
- RossTalk — Up Next [138](#)
- RossTalk Custom Command [136](#), [138–139](#)
- Row ME Assignment [111](#)
- RState, Load [112](#)
- Sequencer Clear [110](#)
- Sequencer Down [111](#)
- Sequencer Link [111](#)
- Sequencer Load [110](#)

#### Custom Control Event (*continued*)

- Sequencer Next [110](#)
- Sequencer Reload [110](#)
- Sequencer Up [111](#)
- Source Bus Substitution [126](#)
- Source ME Substitution [126](#)
- Source Substitution, Delete [126](#)
- State, Insert [98](#)
- Trans Clear [117](#)
- Trans Elements [117](#)
- Trans Limit — On/Off [117](#)
- Trans Limit — Reset [117](#)
- Trans Limit — Set [117](#)
- Trans Limit — Value [117](#)
- Transition Action Dissolve [112](#)
- Transition Action DVE [113](#)
- Transition Action MediaWipe [114](#)
- Transition Action Wipe [113](#)
- TSL Address [126](#)
- TSL Tally MultiViewer Display Mode [126](#)
- Video Mode [127](#)
- Video Server — Cue [139](#)
- Video Server — Get Clips [139](#)
- Video Server — Jog [140](#)
- Video Server — Loop Off [140](#)
- Video Server — Loop On [140](#)
- Video Server — Play [140](#)
- Video Server — Record [140](#)
- Video Server — Shuttle [140](#)
- Video Server — Stop [140](#)
- Wash Color (HSL) [110](#)
- Wash Color (Preset) [110](#)
- Wash Color Reset [110](#)
- Wash Generator — Disable [110](#)
- Wash Generator — Enable [110](#)
- Wipe Direction [118](#)
- Wipe Direction (Flip-Flop) [118](#)
- Wipe Pattern — Aspect Ratio [118](#)
- Wipe Pattern — Border Color (HSL) [118](#)
- Wipe Pattern — Border Color (Preset) [118](#)
- Wipe Pattern — Border Size [118](#)
- Wipe Pattern — Edge Softness [119](#)
- Wipe Pattern — Horizontal Multiplication [119](#)
- Wipe Pattern — Pattern [119](#)
- Wipe Pattern — Rotation [119](#)
- Wipe Pattern — Size [119](#)
- Wipe Pattern — Vertical Multiplication [119](#)
- Wipe Pattern — X-Position [120](#)
- Wipe Pattern — Y-Position [120](#)
- Wipe Reset [120](#)

Custom Controls [18](#), [23](#), [58–61](#), [96–98](#), [106](#), [109–112](#), [120–121](#), [127](#), [132–135](#), [139](#)

- Audio Events [132](#)
- BKGD DVE Events [96](#)
- Camera Events [133](#)
- CC Events [97](#)
- CC Pause [58](#)
- Combined Transition Events [112](#)
- Copy/Paste [61](#)
- DashBoard [18](#)
- Deleting [60](#)



---

## Custom Controls (*continued*)

- Editing [58](#)
  - GPI Events [134](#)
  - Individual Transition Events [112](#)
  - Installation Events [121](#)
  - Keyer Events [98](#)
  - Matte Events [109](#)
  - Media Events [106](#)
  - MultiViewer Events [127](#)
  - Naming [60](#)
  - Pause Mode [59](#)
  - PBus Events [134](#)
  - Personality Events [120](#)
  - Recording [58](#)
  - RossTalk Events [135](#)
  - Run Event [58](#)
  - Running [59](#)
  - Sequencer [62](#)
  - Sequencer Events [110](#)
  - Special Events [111](#)
  - Switcher Events [111](#)
  - Ultritouch [23](#)
  - Video Server Events [139](#)
- Custom Controls, Default [94](#)
- Custom Pages [18, 73](#)
- Auto Follow [73](#)
- Cut Transition [32, 34–35](#)
- Cut Transitions [35](#)

## D

- DashBoard [17–19, 21, 65](#)
- Audio Mixer [19](#)
  - Configuration [17](#)
  - Connecting [65](#)
  - Custom Controls [18](#)
  - Devices [17](#)
  - Live Assist [17](#)
  - MediaManager [18](#)
  - Panel [21](#)
  - PaneLINK [17](#)
  - Personality [18](#)
  - Status [17](#)
  - ViewControl [18](#)
- DashBoard Menus [17](#)
- Default [94](#)
- Factory [94](#)
- Default Bus Map [94](#)
- Delete Media Item [55](#)
- Delete Memory [48](#)
- Delete Still [56](#)
- Deleting a Still [55](#)
- Device [17](#)
- Device Control [11](#)
- Device Name [17](#)
- Disable FTP [65](#)
- Disable RossTalk [93](#)
- Disable Web Media-Store [55](#)
- Dissolve Transitions [36](#)

- DVE [42](#)
- Key [42](#)
  - Cropping [42](#)
- DVE Transitions [36](#)

## E

- Eject Media Item [55](#)
- Engine Type [93](#)
- Events, Custom Control [96](#)

## F

- Factory Default [94](#)
- Fader, Audio [49](#)
- FlexiClean [27, 76](#)
- Fly Key [42](#)
- Follows, ME [76](#)
- FTP [65](#)
- FTP Disable [65](#)

## G

- Glow [82](#)

## H

- Help [18](#)

## I

- Input Router [72](#)
- Installation, Software [14](#)

## K

- Key Preview [39–40, 42](#)
- Key Swap [30](#)
- Keyer Transition Buttons, ViewControl [85](#)
- Keying [39–40, 42–44](#)
- Auto Select [39](#)
  - Chroma Key [40](#)
  - Cropping [42](#)
  - DVE [42](#)
  - Key Priority [39](#)
  - Mask [43](#)
  - Self Key [39](#)
  - Split [39](#)
  - Split Keys [44](#)
- Keys [30](#)
- Copy [30](#)

## L

- Latency [68](#)
- Layers, Audio [49](#)
- Licenses [16](#)
- Live Assist [17–18, 73](#)
- Custom Pages [18, 73](#)

---

Live Assist (*continued*)

  PaneLINK [17](#)

Loopback [50](#)

## M

Mask [43](#)

Matte [29](#)

ME [25](#)

  Source Selection [25](#)

ME Copying [30](#)

ME Follows [74](#), [76](#)

  Substitution Table [74](#)

Media Transitions [37](#)

Media-Manager [56](#)

  Delete Media Item [56](#)

Media-Store [55–56](#)

  Animations [55](#)

  Audio [55](#)

  Clear Channel [55](#)

  Delete Database Entry [55](#)

  Disable Web [55](#)

  Eject [55](#)

  File Specifications [55](#)

  Loading [56](#)

MediaManager [18](#)

  DashBoard [18](#)

Memories [45–46](#), [48](#)

  As Stored Attribute [46](#)

  Attributes [46](#)

  Bus Hold [45](#)

  Delete [48](#)

  No Recall Attribute [46](#)

  Recall Attribute [46](#)

  Recall Colors [46](#)

  Storing [45](#)

Memories, Default [94](#)

Memory Names [48](#)

Menu Group Access [19](#)

MiniME [31](#)

  Transitions [31](#)

Mixer Layer Names [51](#)

Mnemonic Source Names [70](#)

Mnemonics [48](#), [71](#)

  Memory [48](#)

MultiPanel [23](#), [88](#)

  Ultritouch [23](#)

MultiViewer [28](#), [78–79](#)

  Ancillary Source [78](#)

  Clock [79](#)

  Embedded Audio [78](#)

  Time-Clock [78](#)

Mute, Audio [49](#)

## N

NDI [87](#)

NDI Sync [72](#)

Network Ports [65](#)

Network Setup [65](#)

Next Trans Buttons [32](#), [34–35](#)

## O

On-Air Setting [77](#)

Options, Software [16](#)

Outputs [75](#)

  Video [75](#)

## P

Pan, Audio [49](#)

PaneLINK [17](#)

Pause Mode, Custom Control [59](#)

Performance Meter [17](#)

Permissions, Menu Group [19](#)

Personality [18](#), [81](#)

  DashBoard [18](#)

PFL [49](#)

Popup keyboard shortcut [17](#)

Pre Fader Listen [49](#)

Pre-Tiled Sources [74](#)

Preview [28](#)

Preview, Transitions [32](#), [34–35](#)

## R

Rate, Transition [31](#)

RBAC [20](#)

Re-Entry [26](#)

Re-Entry Timing [26](#)

Reset [93](#)

  Custom [93](#)

  Saving [93](#)

ROLL CLIP [32](#), [34–35](#)

RossLinq [65](#)

RossTalk Disable [93](#)

RossTalk Port [93](#)

Router [72](#)

RState [93](#)

RState, Save [93](#)

## S

Save Custom Reset [93](#)

Self Key [39](#)

Sequencer [62–64](#)

  Copy/Paste [64](#)

  Creating [62](#)

  Deleting [64](#)

  Editing [62](#)

  Loading [63](#)

  Naming [63](#)

  Running [63](#)

Serial Number [93](#)

Sets [53](#)

  Loading [53](#)

  Storing [53](#)

Show Alpha [39–40](#), [42–43](#)

Simple Mixer Layer [51](#)



---

- SoftPanel [21–22](#)
  - Bus Area [22](#)
  - Control Area [21](#)
  - Menu Area [21](#)
  - User Area [21](#)
- Software Installation [14](#)
- Software Licenses [16](#)
- Software Version [93](#)
- Solo Clear, Audio [49](#)
- Solo, Audio [49](#)
- Source Names [70](#)
- Sources [26](#)
  - Layering [26](#)
  - Re-Entry [26](#)
- Specifications [95](#)
- Split Key [44](#)
- Split Keys [39](#)
- State Attributes [98](#)
- Status [23, 93](#)
  - Ultritouch [23](#)
- Status Monitor [94](#)
- Storing Memories [45](#)
- Substitution Table [74](#)
- Substitution Tables [74](#)
- Switcher Status [93](#)
- Switcher Status Monitor [94](#)

## T

- Time-Clock [78](#)
- Timing Windows, Re-Entry [26](#)
- Trans Preview [32, 34–35](#)
- Transition Buttons, ViewControl [85](#)
- Transitions [31–32, 34–37](#)
  - Auto Transition [32, 34–35](#)
  - Cut [32, 34–35](#)
  - Cuts [35](#)
  - Direction [31](#)
  - Dissolves [36](#)
  - DVE [36](#)
  - Flip Flop [31](#)
  - from Panel [32, 34–35](#)
  - from Touchscreen Menu [31](#)
  - Media [37](#)
  - MiniME [31](#)
  - Pause [31](#)
  - Preview [32, 34–35](#)
  - Rate [31](#)
  - Roll Clip [31](#)
  - Trans Preview [31](#)

- Transitions (*continued*)
  - Wipes [36](#)
- Transitions Limit [31](#)
- TSL UMD [70](#)
- TSL UMD Port [93](#)

## U

- Ultritouch [23](#)
  - Buses [23](#)
  - Custom Controls [23](#)
  - MultiPanel [23](#)
  - Navigation Menu [23](#)
  - Status [23](#)
- User Buttons [83–84](#)

## V

- Video Inputs [69–71](#)
  - Auto Key [71](#)
  - Names [70](#)
- Video Layering [26](#)
- Video Mode [68, 93](#)
- Video Output [75–76, 78](#)
  - Clean Feed [76](#)
  - MultiViewer [78](#)
- Video Processing and Flow [24](#)
- Video Source [25, 83](#)
  - Bus Map [83](#)
- Video Sources [25](#)
  - External [25](#)
  - Follows [25](#)
  - Internal [25](#)
  - Selecting [25](#)
  - Selecting on DashBoard [25](#)
- Video Sync, NDI [72](#)
- ViewControl [18, 85–87](#)
  - Bus Selection Buttons [85](#)
  - Button Setup [86](#)
  - Custom Control Buttons [85](#)
  - Keyer Transition Buttons [85](#)
  - NDI [87](#)
  - Transition Buttons [85](#)
- Virtual Outputs [75](#)

## W

- Web Media Manager Disable [55](#)
- Windows Login [9](#)
- Wipe Transitions [36](#)